

**Міністерство освіти і науки, молоді та спорту України  
Волинський національний університет  
імені Лесі Українки**

**Черняк О. П.**

**ІНОЗЕМНА МОВА (АНГЛІЙСЬКА)**

**ЧАСТИНА II**

***НАВЧАЛЬНО-МЕТОДИЧНИЙ ПОСІБНИК  
ДЛЯ СТУДЕНТІВ I КУРСУ  
ФАКУЛЬТЕТУ МІЖНАРОДНИХ ВІДНОСИН***

**Луцьк 2011**

УДК 811.111:37.091.214  
ББК 81.432.1– Я81  
Ч 49

*Рекомендовано до друку вченою радою  
Волинського національного університету імені Лесі Українки  
(протокол № 12 від 23 червня 2011 р.)*

**Рецензенти:**

**Чарікова І. В.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри англійської філології Волинського національного університету імені Лесі Українки

**Книш Т. В.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри іноземних мов та перекладу ЛІРоЛ “Україна”

**Черняк О. П. Іноземна мова (англійська). Частина II :** навчально-методичний посібник для студентів I курсу факультету міжнародних відносин. – 172 с.

Навчально-методичний посібник є другою частиною курсу “Іноземна мова (англійська)”. Матеріал розбито на чотири модулі, кожен з яких містить оригінальні тексти з творів англійських та американських авторів, розробку словника та завдань до них. Подано зразки розмовних тем, тематичні діалоги, активний вокабуляр та вправи комунікативного характеру. Крім того, кожен розділ містить пояснення граматичних явищ і завдання, що сприяють їх засвоєнню. Призначено для студентів I курсу факультету міжнародних відносин.

УДК 811.111:37.091.214  
ББК 81.432.1– Я81  
Ч 49

© Черняк О. П., 2011

## Пояснювальна записка

Навчально-методичний посібник є другою частиною курсу “Іноземна мова (англійська)”. Матеріал розбито на чотири модулі, кожен з яких містить оригінальні тексти з творів англійських та американських авторів, розробку словника та завдань до них. Подано зразки розмовних тем, тематичні діалоги, активний вокабуляр та вправи комунікативного характеру. Крім того, кожен розділ містить пояснення граматичних явищ і завдання, що сприяють їх засвоєнню.

Перший модуль складається з двох розділів та містить такі розмовні теми: “*Meals*”, “*Shopping*” та граматичні структури: *the Present Perfect Tense*, *the Past Perfect Tense*, *The Future Perfect Tense*.

Другий модуль складається з двох розділів та містить такі розмовні теми: “*Seasons and Weather*”, “*Climate*” та граматичні структури: *Indirect Speech*, *Sequence of Tenses*.

Третій модуль складається з двох розділів та містить такі розмовні теми: “*At the Doctor’s. Health and Medicine*”, “*Sports and Games*” та граматичні структури: *The Present Perfect Continuous Tense*, *The Past Perfect Continuous Tense*, *The Future Perfect Continuous Tense*.

Четвертий модуль складається з одного розділу та містить розмовну тему “*Means of Communication*” та граматичну структуру *The Passive Voice*.

Призначено для студентів I курсу факультету міжнародних відносин.

# MODULE 1

## UNIT 1

### MEALS

#### I. TEXT

##### The Tea

Mrs Sunbury arranged the tea very stylishly. She took the **knick-knacks** off a little table in the sitting-room, which they never used, and put a tea-cloth on it. She got out the tea service and the plated tea-kettle which they never used **either**, and she made **scones**, **baked** a cake, and cut thin bread-and-butter.

“I want her to see that we’re not just nobody,” she told her Samuel.

Herbert went to fetch Miss Bevan, and Mr Sunbury **intercepted** them at the door in case Herbert should take her into the dining-room where normally they ate and sat. Herbert gave the tea-table a glance of surprise as he ushered the young woman into the sitting-room.

“This is Betty, Mum,” he said.

“Miss Bevan, I **presume**,” said Mrs Sunbury.

“That’s right, but call me Betty, won’t you?”

“Perhaps the acquaintance is a bit short for that,” said Mrs Sunbury with a **gracious** smile. “Won’t you sit down, Miss Bevan?”

Strangely enough, or perhaps not strangely at all, Betty Bevan looked very much as Mrs Sunbury must have looked at her age. She had the same sharp features and the same rather small beady eyes, but her lips were scarlet with paint, her cheeks lightly rouged and her short black hair permanently waved. Mrs Sunbury took in all this at a glance, and she **reckoned** to a penny how much her smart rayon dress had cost, her extravagant high-heeled shoes and the **saucy** hat on her head. Her frock was very short and she showed a good deal of flesh-coloured stocking. Mrs Sunbury, **disapproving** of her make-up and of her **apparel**, took an instant dislike to her, but she had **made up her mind** to behave like a lady, and if she didn’t know how to behave like a lady nobody did, so at first things went well. She poured out tea and asked Herbert to give a cup to his lady girl.

“Ask Miss Bevan if she’ll have some bread-and-butter or a scone, Samuel, my dear.”

“Have both,” said Samuel, hanging round the two plates, in his **coarse** way. “I like to see people **eat hearty**.”

Betty **insecurely perched** a piece of bread-and-butter and a scone on her **saucer** and Mrs Sunbury talked **affably** about the weather. She had the satisfaction of seeing that Betty was getting more and more **ill at ease**. Then she cut the cake

and pressed a large piece on her guest. Betty **took a bite** at it and when she put it in her saucer it fell to the ground.

“Oh, I’m sorry,” said the girl as she picked it up.

“It doesn’t matter at all, I’ll cut you another piece,” said Mrs Sunbury.

“Oh, don’t **bother**. I’m not particular. The floor’s clean.”

“I hope so,” said Mrs Sunbury with an acid smile, “but I wouldn’t dream of letting you eat a piece of cake that’s been on the floor. Bring it here, Herbert, and I’ll give Miss Bevan some more.”

“I don’t want any more, Mrs Sunbury, I don’t really.”

“I’m sorry you don’t like my cake. I made it specially for you.” She took a bit. “It **tastes** all right to me.”

“It’s not that, Mrs Sunbury. It’s a beautiful cake, it’s only that I’m not hungry.”

She refused to have more tea and Mrs Sunbury saw she was glad **to get rid of** the cup. “I expect they have their meals in the kitchen,” she said to herself. Then Herbert lit a cigarette.

“Give us a **fag**, Herb,” said Betty. “I’m simply dying for a smoke.”

Mrs Sunbury didn’t approve of women smoking but she only **raised** her eyebrows slightly.

“We prefer to call him Herbert, Miss Bevan,” she said.

Betty wasn’t such a fool as not to see that Mrs Sunbury had been doing all she could to make her uncomfortable, and now she saw a chance to get back on her.

“I know,” she said. “When he told me his name was Herbert I nearly **burst out laughing**. Fancy calling anyone Herbert. A scream, I call it.”

“I’m sorry you don’t like the name my son was given at his baptism. I think it’s a very nice name, but I suppose it all depends on what sort of class of people one is.”

Herbert stepped in to the rescue.

“At the office they call me Bertie, Mum.”

“Then all I can say is, they’re a lot of very common men.”

Mrs Sunbury lapsed into a **dignified** silence and the conversation such as it was, was maintained by Mr Sunbury and Herbert. It was not without satisfaction that Mrs Sunbury perceived that Betty was offended. She also **perceived** that the girl wanted to go, but didn’t quite know how to **manage** it. She was determined not to help her. Finally Herbert took the matter into his own hands.

“Well, Betty, I think it’s about time we were getting along,” he said. “I’ll walk back with you.”

“Must you go already?” said Mrs Sunbury, rising to her feet. “It’s been a pleasure, I’m sure.”

“Pretty little thing,” said Mr Sunbury **tentatively** after the young things had left.

*(From “The Kite” by W. Somerset Maugham)*

## Vocabulary Notes

**knick-knack** – *n* [count.] a small object used as a decoration (дрібничка)

**either** – *adv* used in negative sentences to mean 'also' (також)

*E.g.* I haven't seen the movie and my brother hasn't either.

"I don't like him." "I don't either."

! **Also, too, as well** are used in affirmative sentences.

**Also** is more formal than **too**, and is used more often in writing than in speech: *Tom was also hungry.* **Too** and **as well** are less formal and more often used in spoken English: *The dog's hungry, Tom's hungry too, and I am as well.* Do not say 'Tom was also not hungry'. Say 'Tom was not hungry either.'

**scone** – *n* [count] a small round cake that you eat with butter or cream and jam (булочка)

**bake** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to cook something such as bread or cakes in an oven (пекти)

*E.g.* I'm baking a cake.

! **Pay attention**

**bake** - to cook food such as bread in the oven (пекти)

**fry** - to cook food in oil on the top part of the oven (смажити)

**roast** - to cook meat or vegetables in an oven (запикати)

**grill** - to cook food by placing it near to strong heat from above (запикати на грилі)

**broil** - to cook meat or fish for a short time in the hottest part of the oven (смажити на відкритому вогні)

**boil** - to cook vegetables in water on the top part of the oven (варити)

**steam** - to cook vegetables over water (варити на пару)

**intercept** – *v* [trans.] to stop someone or something that is going from one place to another (перехопити)

*E.g.* Police intercepted his letters.

**presume** – *v* 1. [trans.] to think that something is true, although you do not know for certain: **presume (that)** (припускати)

*E.g.* I presume you'll be there.

2. [intrans.] *formal* to behave rudely by doing something that you have no right to do: **presume to do something** (наважитися щось зробити)

*E.g.* I would never presume to tell you what to do.

**gracious** – *adj* 1. polite, kind, and generous (добрий, милосердний)

*E.g.* A gracious host

2. comfortable and wealthy (приємний)

*E.g.* A gracious country lifestyle

**reckon** – *v* [trans.] to think that something is true (вважати, гадати)

*E.g.* We've done all we can, I reckon.

*Synonyms:*

**think** - to have an opinion about someone or something.

**believe sth** - to think that it is true.

**suspect sth** - to think that something, especially something unpleasant, is true but not be sure.

**consider** a plan/choice etc - to think about it carefully before deciding what to do.

**reckon/figure sth** *Amer. English* - used to say what your opinion is: *I reckon he's at least 19.*

**guess** - to think that something is true, but not be certain.

**saucy** – *adj* in a way that is amusing but not shocking (різкий, забавно-нахабний)

*E.g.* saucy pictures

**disapprove** – *v* [intrans.] to think that someone or something is bad or wrong: **disapprove of** (не схвалювати)

*E.g.* Her parents strongly disapprove of her lifestyle.

**apparel** – *n* [uncount.] *formal* clothes (одяг)

**make up one's mind** – to decide (вирішити)

*E.g.* Have you made up your mind where to spend summer holidays?

**coarse** – *adj* 1. rough and thick, not smooth or fine (грубий)

*E.g.* A coarse woollen blanket .

2. rude and offensive (грубий, образливий)

**eat hearty** – eat a lot of food (їсти багато)

**insecurely** – *adv* not feeling confident about oneself (невпевнено)

*E.g.* She felt insecurely about her appearance.

**perch** – *v* [trans., intrans.] 1. **be perched on/above etc sth** – to be in a position on top of something or on the edge of something (високо розміщуватися)

*E.g.* The hotel was perched high on a cliff above the bay.

2. to sit on the edge of sth (всістися)

*E.g.* She perched herself on the bar stool.

**saucer** – *n* [count.] a small round plate that you put under a cup (блюдце)

*E.g.* A china cup and saucer

**affably** – *adv* pleasantly, in a friendly way (приємно, дружелюбно)

**ill at ease** – nervous, uncomfortable, or embarrassed (ніяково)

*E.g.* She felt ill at ease.

**bite** – *n* [count.] when you cut or chew something with your teeth: **take/have a bite (of sth /out of sth)** (кусати)

*E.g.* He took a bite of the cheese.

Can I have a bite of your apple?

**bother** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to make someone feel slightly annoyed, worried, or upset (турбувати, хвилювати)

*E.g.* It was noisy, but that didn't bother me.

Does it bother you that he forgets your name?

**get rid of sth** – to throw away, sell, or destroy sth you do not want any more (позбавитися)

*E.g.* I got rid of all those old toys.

**fag** *n* [count.] *British English informal* a cigarette

**raise** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to move sth to a higher position or into an upright position [ $\neq$  lower] (підняти)

*E.g.* Raise your hand if you know the answer.

## **! Pay attention**

*Difference between raise (raised, raised) and rise (rose, risen)*

**Rise** (піднятися) is not followed by an object: *The balloon rose high into the air. Raise* (підняти) is always followed by an object: *Raise your hand if you know the answer.*

**burst out laughing** – to suddenly start to laugh (розсміятися)

**dignified** – *adj* behaving in a calm and serious way that makes other people respect you (величний, з почуттям власної гідності)

*E.g.* A dignified leader

**perceive** – *v* [trans.] 1. to understand or think about something or someone in a particular way (розуміти, усвідомлювати)

*E.g.* Even as a young woman she was perceived as a future leader.

2. to notice, hear, or see something (розпізнавати)

*E.g.* Cats are not able to perceive colour.

**manage** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to succeed in doing something difficult or in dealing with problems: **manage to do something** (вдатися)

*E.g.* I finally managed to open the door.

**tentatively** – *adv* not definitely or certainly (експериментально, для проби)

## *EXERCISES*

### **I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:**

1. вона забрала дрібнички з маленького столика;
2. які вони ніколи не використовували;
3. я люблю бачити, що люди багато їдять;
4. він здивовано подивився на стіл;
5. вибухнути сміхом;
6. я приготувала його спеціально для вас;
7. не схвалювати її макіяж;
8. вона лише злегка підняла брови;
9. він впав на землю;
10. Герберт взяв справу в свої руки.

### **II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:**

*cup, dignified, sitting-room, rescue, meals, door, smoke, beady, perceived, fool.*

1. she was glad to get rid of the \_\_\_\_\_;
2. I expect they have their \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen;
3. the same sharp features and the same rather small \_\_\_\_\_ eyes;
4. Mr Sunbury intercepted them at the \_\_\_\_\_;
5. Herbert stepped in to the \_\_\_\_\_;
6. I'm simply dying for a \_\_\_\_\_;



7. he ushered the young woman into the \_\_\_\_\_;
8. Mrs Sunbury \_\_\_\_\_ that Betty was offended;
9. Mrs Sunbury lapsed into a \_\_\_\_\_ silence;
10. Betty wasn't such a \_\_\_\_\_.

### III. Fill in the correct prepositions:

1. Betty was getting more and more ill \_\_\_\_\_ ease;
2. It all depends \_\_\_\_\_ what sort of class \_\_\_\_\_ people one is;
3. she had made \_\_\_\_\_ her mind to behave like a lady;
4. I nearly burst \_\_\_\_\_ laughing;
5. she was glad to get rid \_\_\_\_\_ the cup;
6. Mrs Sunbury didn't approve \_\_\_\_\_ women smoking;
7. Mrs Sunbury talked affably \_\_\_\_\_ the weather;
8. now she saw a chance to get back \_\_\_\_\_ her;
9. he ushered the young woman \_\_\_\_\_ the sitting-room;
10. when she put it \_\_\_\_\_ her saucer it fell \_\_\_\_\_ the ground.

### IV. Match the word with its explanation:

<b>1. bake</b>	a) to cook vegetables over water;
<b>2. fry</b>	b) to cook food in oil on the top part of the oven;
<b>3. roast</b>	c) to cook vegetables in water on the top part of the oven;
<b>4. grill</b>	d) to cook food such as bread in the oven;
<b>5. steam</b>	e) to cook meat or vegetables in an oven.
<b>6. broil</b>	f) to cook food by placing it near to strong heat from above;
<b>7. boil</b>	g) to cook meat or fish for a short time in the hottest part of the oven;

**V. Study the text, put 10 questions to it and ask your group-mates to answer them.**

### VI. Retell the text:

- in the person of Mrs Sunbury;
- in the person of Betty;
- in the third person.

## II. TOPIC

### Enjoy your Meal

It is not a secret that our meals influence our mood. Also it is very important for our health. Every single person should eat proper kinds of food – **dairy products, meat, fruit and vegetables, fats and sugars, cereals and grains**. Dairy products provide us with calcium, meat provide our bodies with protein, iron, zinc.

Eating fruit and vegetables helps to keep us healthy too because they give us fibre, vitamins and minerals. We should eat fats and sugars in moderation, because too much fats and sugars can cause different heart-diseases. Cereals and grains are important for us because they provide us with the energy we need for physical activity.

In this fast-moving world it is necessary to watch what we eat – it should be **healthy food**, not junk one, which has become very popular. Eating too much **junk food** can cause overweight and a heart-disease. For example, it is much better to eat an apple or a banana than to eat a **double hamburger with ketchup and mayonnaise**. You will **feel full** in both cases, but a fruit or a vegetable is healthier.

Today there are a lot of different **restaurants** and **cafes** where you can eat **delicious** and not really expensive food. The service is usually excellent and friendly waiters help you to relax and enjoy your meal fully. You can eat any types of food in restaurants – you can try **homemade cakes, beefsteaks, pasta and macaroni** and others. For a main course you can order **fish, meat or chicken** with some **rice or potatoes**, also you can ask for pasta and salad. You can eat a bowl of **ice-cream**, a pieces of **apple pie, strawberries with cream** or something like that **for dessert**. For drink you can order **a glass of water or juice, a cup of coffee or tea or alcohol drink** such as **wine or beer**.

**Eating habits** are different in different countries. For example, Brazilians never eat with their hands – they always use a knife and a fork, even when they eat hotdogs. Finns like to eat hot sausages and drink beer in the streets; many Philipinos prefer to eat with their hands. Also they think that it is polite to leave a little food on the plate at the end of a meal.

Well, as for me I do respect their eating habits and like to eat different countries' food such as **Italian Pasta, Japanese rice with sushi or Indian spicy meat**. But most of all I like just ice-cream. It doesn't matter what kind – with **raspberry favor, with marmalade, chocolate chips or pieces of fruit**. I can eat it anytime and anywhere. But anyways whatever you like you should remember words of wisdom which say that we eat to live, but not live to eat.

**You are what you eat!**



*"You are what you eat!"* is a common expression meaning that your body shape is directly related to what or how much you eat.

So if you **have a sweet tooth**, and like eating cakes, sweets or chocolate, it's likely that you will eventually **put on weight**. As you get older, it becomes more difficult to **lose / shed weight**. In fact, you might

see some **middle-age spread**, where you put on weight especially around your waist and hips.

What's the best way to lose weight? Do you wait until you can **pinch an inch** (i.e. measure at least an inch worth of fat around your middle) and then **go on a crash diet**? Maybe it's better not to wait until you notice you're **piling on the pounds** (gaining a lot of weight) but to **watch what you eat** all the time. Some people always **count the calories**, and avoid **snacking between meals**. Others **cut out certain foods** altogether (never eating bread or pasta, for example) to avoid **going up a size**.

Eating sensibly all the time is a good way to **watch your figure**. **Cut down on** (= reduce the amount of) fatty or sugary foods, **take plenty of exercise**, and make sure you're getting your **five a day**. (= Five portions of fruit or vegetables every day.)

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

• Enjoy your Meal	• You are what you eat!
<p><b>dairy products</b> – молочні продукти, <b>meat</b> – м'ясо, <b>fruit</b> – фрукти, <b>vegetables</b> – овочі, <b>fats</b> – жири, <b>sugar</b> – цукор, <b>cereals</b> – каші, <b>grains</b> – крупи, <b>healthy food</b> – здорова їжа, <b>junk food</b> – нездорова (швидка) їжа, <b>double hamburger with ketchup and mayonnaise</b> – подвійний гамбургер з кетчупом і майонезом, <b>feel full</b> – почуватися ситим, <b>restaurant</b> – ресторан, <b>cafe</b> – кафе, <b>delicious food</b> – смачна їжа, <b>homemade cakes</b> – домашні тістечка, <b>beefsteak</b> – біфштекс, <b>pasta</b> – паста. <b>macaroni</b> – макарони, <b>fish</b> – риба, <b>chicken</b> – курча, <b>rice</b> – рис, <b>potatoes</b> – картопля, <b>apple pie</b> – яблучний пиріг, <b>strawberries with cream</b> – полуниця з вершками, <b>for dessert</b> – на десерт, <b>glass of water or juice</b> – склянка води чи соку, <b>a cup of coffee or tea</b> – чашка кави чи чаю, <b>alcohol drink</b> – алкогольний напій, <b>wine</b> – вино, <b>beer</b> – пиво, <b>eating habit</b> – звичка вживання їжі, <b>Italian Pasta</b> – італійська паста, <b>Japanese rice with</b></p>	<p><b>have a sweet tooth</b> – бути ласунчиком  <b>put on weight</b> – набирати вагу,  <b>lose / shed weight</b> – втрачати вагу,  <b>middle-age spread</b> – тенденція людей середнього віку,  <b>pinch an inch</b> – помітити зайвий дюйм, <b>go on a crash diet</b> – сідати на жорстку дієту, <b>pile on the pounds</b> – сильно набирати вагу,  <b>watch what you eat</b> – дивитися за тим, що ти їси,  <b>count the calories</b> – рахувати калорії, <b>snack between meals</b> – перекушувати перед прийомами їжі,  <b>cut out certain foods</b> – виключити певну їжу, <b>go up a size</b> – поправитися на розмір, <b>watch your figure</b> – слідкувати за фігурою,  <b>cut down on fatty or sugary foods</b> – уникати жирної чи солодкої їжі, <b>take plenty of exercise</b> – займатися фізичними вправами, <b>five a day</b> – п'ять порцій фруктів чи овочів на день</p>

<b>sushi</b> – японський рис з суші, <b>Indian spicy meat</b> – індійське гостре м'ясо, <b>raspberry favor</b> – смак малини, <b>marmalade</b> – мармелад, <b>chocolate chips</b> – шоколадні чіпси, <b>pieces of fruit</b> – шматки фруктів	
--	--

### Additional Vocabulary

<b>General</b>	
fast food	їжа, яку можна перехопити на швидку руку, фастфуд
fresh food	свіжі продукти
frozen food	заморожені продукти
cooked food	готові до вживання продукти
spicy food	гострі, приправлені спеціями продукти
canned food	консерви
keep (stick) to a diet	притримуватися дієти
<b>Farinaceous Foods (Хлібобулочні вироби)</b>	
(home-made) biscuit	(домашнє) печиво
(brown/new/rye/stale/white) bread	(чорний/свіжий/житній/черствий/білий) хліб
bread crumbs	хлібні крихти
bun (roll)	здобна булочка
(rich/unleavened) dough	(здобне/прісне) тісто
cake	торт, тістечко
cereal (cornflakes)	сухий сніданок (пластівці)
cheesecake	ватрушка
doughnut	пончик
dumpling	кльоцка
flour	борошно
loaf (pl. loaves) of bread	буханець хліба
macaroni, pasta	макаронні вироби
pancake	млинець
pastry	випічка, здобне тісто
pie	пиріг, пиріжок
puff	слойка
ring roll	бублик
rusk	сухарик
scone	ячмінна або пшенична булочка
slice of bread	тонкий шматок хліба
toast	грінка

vermicelli	вермішель
waffle	вафля
<b>Cereals (Злаки)</b>	
barley	ячмінь
buck wheat	гречана крупа
corn	кукурудза
cornflakes	кукурудзяні пластівці
grain	зерно, хлібні злаки
maize	кукурудза, маїс
millet	просо, пшоно
oats	овес
pearl barley	перлова крупа
porridge	вівсяна каша
rice	рис
semolina	манна крупа
wheat	пшениця
<b>Meat (М'ясо)</b>	
(fat/lean) bacon	(жирний/пісний) бекон, копчена грудинка
(raw) beef	(сира) яловичина
(rare/underdone/overdone/well-done) beefsteak	(з кров'ю/ недосмажений /пересмажений / добре просмажений) біфштекс
chop	відбивна котлета
cutlet	рублена котлета
ham	вітчина
mutton (lamb)	баранина
pork	свинина
roast beef	ростбіф
salami	копчена ковбаса
sausage	ковбаса (варена), сосиска
veal	телятина
<b>Poultry and Game (Домашня птиця і дичина)</b>	
chicken	курча
duck	качка
goose	гуска
partridge	куропатка
pheasant	фазан
rabbit	кролик
turkey	індичка
<b>Fish and Sea food (Риба і морепродукти)</b>	
bream	лящ

carp	короп
cod	тріска
crab	краб
crayfish (Br.), crawfish (Am.)	(річковий) рак
eel	вугор
hake	хек
herring	оселедець
jellied fish	заливна риба
lobster	омар
mackerel	макрель, скумбрія
mussel	мідія
perch	окунь
pike	щука
plaice	камбала
salmon	лосось, сьомга
sardine	сардина
shellfish	молюск, ракоподібне
sprat	кілька, салака
trout	форель
oyster	устриця
shrimp (prawn)	креветка
<b>Dairy Products (Молочні продукти)</b>	
sour milk	кисле молоко
sour cream	сметана
whipped cream	збиті вершки
butter	(вершкове) масло
margarine	маргарин
cheese	сир
cottage cheese	домашній сир
cream cheese	сиркова маса
processed cheese	плавлений сир
fried eggs	смажені яйця
hard-(soft) boiled egg	яйце круте (м'яке)
omelette	омлет
shell (v.) an egg	почистити яйце
whip (whisk, beat) an egg	збити яйце
white (yolk) of an egg	білок (жовток) яйця
<b>Vegetables (Овочі)</b>	
asparagus	спаржа
beet	буряк
broccoli	брокколи
Brussels sprouts	брюссельська капуста

cabbage	капуста
carrot	морква
cauliflower	цвітна капуста
celery	селера
courgette	молодий кабачок; цукіні
cucumber	огірок
dill	кріп
egg plant (aubergine)	баклажан
garlic	часник
green peas	зелений горох
lettuce	салат-латук
marrow (squash)	кабачок
mushroom	гриб
onion	цибуля
parsley	петрушка
pepper	перець
pickled cucumbers (pickles)	солені або мариновані огірки
(fried/mashed) potatoes	(смажена) картопля(не пюре)
pumpkin	гарбуз
radish	редиска
sauerkraut	квашена капуста
spinach	шпинат
sweet pepper	перець солодкий
tomato	помідор
turnip	ріпа
white radish	редька
<b>Fruits, Berries and Nuts (Фрукти, ягоди, горіхи)</b>	
almond	мигдаль
apple	яблуко
apricot	абрикос
banana	банан
blackberry	ожина
blueberry	чорниця
cherry	вишня, черешня
cranberry	журавлина
gooseberry	аґрус
grapes	виноград
hazelnut	лісовий горіх (фундук)
lemon	лимон
nutmeg	мускатний горіх
(seedless) raisin(s)	родзинки (без кісточок)
orange	апельсин

peach	персик
pine-apple	ананас
plum	слива
pomegranate	гранат
prune	чорнослив
tangerine	мандарин
melon	диня
strawberry	суниця, полуниця
raspberry	малина
(black, red, white) currant	(чорна, червона, біла) смородина
seeds	насіння
walnut	грецький горіх
watermelon	кавун
<b>Spices (Спеції)</b>	
cinnamon	кориця
dress (v)	заправляти (салат)
ginger	імбир
horse radish	хрін
ketchup	кетчуп
mustard	гірчиця
oil	олія
pepper	перець
powdered sugar	цукрова пудра
salt	сіль
sugar	цукор
sunflower oil	соняшникова олія
vanilla	ваніль
vinegar	оцет
yeast	дріжджі
<b>Beverages (Напої)</b>	
(dark, stout/ale, lager, light/bitter) beer	(темне/світле/гірке) пиво
cream tea	чай з вершками
take sugar (milk) in (tea/coffee)	пити (чай/каву) з цукром (молоком)
brandy (cognac)	бренді (коньяк)
champagne	шампанське
cocoa	какао
(black/instant/strong/white) coffee	(чорна/розчинна/міцна/с молоком) кава
(grind (v)/make (v)) coffee	(молоти/варити) каву
cocktail	коктейль
(soft/strong) drinks	(безалкогольні/міцні) напої
spirits	спиртне, алкоголь



fruit juice	фруктовий сік
lemonade	лимонад
liqueur	лікер
(mineral/soda/spring) water	(мінеральна/газована/джерельна вода
whisky	віскі
(dry/sweet/table) wine	(сухе/солодке/ столове) вино
<b>Sweets (Солодощі)</b>	
bar of (milk/nut) chocolate	плитка (молочного/ з горіхами) шоколаду
box of chocolates	коробка шоколадних цукерок
honey	мед
ice-cream	морозиво
jar of jam	банка варення
pudding	пудинг, запіканка
<b>Some dishes (Деякі страви)</b>	
broth	бульйон
chips	(Brit.) картопля фрі, (Am.) чіпси
crisps	(Brit.) чіпси
French fries	(Am.) картопля фрі
garnish	гарнір
gravy	підливка, соус
milk shake	молочний коктейль
paste, pate	паштет
prawn cocktail	салат з креветок
(cream) sauce	(білий) соус
soup	суп
stewed fruit	компот
<b>Eating Out (Їсти не вдома)</b>	
(snack) bar	бар, буфет, закусошна
café	кафе
self-service café	кафе самообслуговування
canteen	їдальня (в закладі)
menu card (bill of fares; menu)	меню
wine list	карта вин
à la carte	порційні страви
table d'hôte	табльдот, загальний стіл
refreshment-room (syn. buffet)	буфет (на вокзалі, в театрі)
restaurant	ресторан
waiter (waitress)	офіціант(-ка)
order	замовлення
book, (reserve) a table in advance	замовити столик заздалегідь
Can I have...?	Можу я замовити... ?

starter (Brit.), appetizer (Amer.)	закуска (їжа, яку подають перед гарячими стравами)
a three-course dinner	обід з трьох страв
for the first (main) course	на перше (друге)
for dessert	на десерт
pay the (heavy) bill	оплатити (великий) рахунок
tip	чайові
pass (hand over)	передати
hearty (substantial, square) meal	ситна їжа
it tastes (smells) good	(пахне) смачно
sweet	солодкий
bitter	гіркий
sour	кислий
salty	солоний
unsalted	недосолений
well-(un/under)cooked	добре приготований (сирий/не пропечений)
stodgy	густий, не пропечений
savoury	приємний на смак, апетитний (про їжу, напої)
bland	без смаку
<b>Cooking (Готування)</b>	
bake	пекти
beat up	відбити (м'ясо)
boil	варити
boil potatoes in jackets	зварити картоплю в мундирі
chop	нарізати (м'ясо)
cook (v)	готувати
cook	кухар
chef	шеф-кухар
drain	процідити
grate	натерти на тертушці
grater	тертушка
grill	смажити(ся) на грилі
fry	смажити на сковорідці
mince the meat	зробити фарш
peel (potatoes, onion)	чистити
recipe	рецепт
roast	смажити (на відкритому вогні)
simmer	варить на повільному вогні
spread	намазувати
sprinkle	посипати

stew	тушити
stuff	фарш (начинка), фарширувати
pour out	наливати
spill over	пролити
stir	помішувати
<b>Tableware and Cutlery (Столовий посуд і столові прибори)</b>	
bowl	миска
bread-basket, bread-plate	хлібниця
butter dish	масляниця
china	фарфоровий посуд
coffee pot	кофейник
corkscrew	штопор
crockery	(глиняний, фаянсовий) посуд
cutlery	ножові вироби, столові прилади
dish	тарілка, страва
fork	виделка
jug	глечик
knife	ніж
(soup) ladle	черпак
napkin	серветка
pepperbox	перечниця
(dinner/deep, soup/dessert, cake/salad) plate	(мілка, велика/глибока/десертна/салатна) тарілка
cellar	сільничка
saucer	блюдце
sugar basin	цукорниця
(tea/coffee/dinner) set/service	(чайний/кавовий/обідній) сервіз
kettle	чайник (для кип'ятіння води)
teapot	чайник (для заварки)
tray	таця
(tea-/table-) spoon	(чайна/столова) ложка
wineglass	бокал для вина
champagne glass	бокал для шампанського
brandy glass	рюмка для коньяку
beer glass	склянка для пива

### Expressions of quantity

**A bag of:** a bag of potatoes, a bag of oranges, a bag of dog food, a bag of potato chips;

**A bar of:** a bar of chocolate, a candy bar, a bar of soap;

**A bottle of:** a bottle of milk, a bottle of mineral water, a bottle of grapefruit juice, a bottle of red wine, 2 bottles of beer, a bottle of ketchup, a bottle of soy sauce;

**A bowl of:** a bowl of breakfast cereal, a bowl of cornflakes, a bowl of salad, a bowl of soup;

**A box of:** a box of spaghetti, a box of corn flakes, a box of crackers, a box of cookies, a box of chocolates, a box of matches;

**A bunch of:** a bunch of parsley, a bunch of carrots, a bunch of radishes, a bunch of flowers;

**A can of:** a can of green peas, a can of olives, a can of tomato soup, a can of sardines, a can of beer, a can of hair spray;

**A carton of:** a carton of milk, a carton of fruit juice, a carton of eggs, a carton of cigarettes (10 packs of cigarettes);

**A container of:** a container of sour cream, a container / a cup of yogurt;

**A cup of:** a cup of coffee, a cup of tea, a cup of soup, a (plastic) cup of coffee;

**A dozen (of):** a dozen eggs, 2 dozen eggs, a dozen oranges, a dozen of hamburger rolls;

**A glass of:** a glass of milk, a glass of beer, a glass of wine;

**A head of:** a head of cabbage, a head of cauliflower, 2 heads of garlic;

**A jar of:** a jar of coffee, a jar of mayonnaise, a jar of raspberry jam, a jar of pickles;

**A loaf of:** a loaf of bread, a loaf of French bread, 2 loaves of rye bread;

**A mug of:** a mug of beer, a mug of coffee;

**A package of:** a package of hot dogs, a package of chicken legs, a package of sesame rolls, a package of cookies, a package of cottage cheese, a package of popcorn, a package of beans, a package of candies;

**A pack of:** a pack of chewing gum, a pack of cigarettes, a pack of cards; a six-pack of beer, a twelve-pack of mineral water, a twin pack;

**A piece of:** a piece of bread, a piece of cake, a piece of pie, a piece of sugar, 2 pieces of sugar;

**A roll of:** a roll of toilet paper, a roll of paper towels, a roll of foil, a roll of film;

**A slice of:** a slice of bread, a slice of pie, a slice of pizza, a slice of cheese, a slice of tomato;

**A teaspoon of:** a teaspoon of coffee, a teaspoon of sugar, a tablespoon of salt;

**A tube of:** a tube of mustard, a tube of hand cream, a tube of shampoo, a tube of toothpaste.

## **Additional Topic**

### **BRITISH MEALS**

The first meal of the day in the morning is breakfast (usually eaten between about 7:30 and 9:00). Many British people eat toast with butter or margarine and

jam (often strawberry, raspberry, apricot or blackcurrant jam), marmalade (a type of jam made from oranges) or Marmite (a dark brown spread made from yeast). Melon, grapefruit or fruit cocktail are popular. Others eat a bowl of cereal; for example, cornflakes or muesli with milk, or porridge (a mixture of oats, hot milk and sugar). A traditional English breakfast (also known as a cooked breakfast or a fry-up) is a cooked meal which may contain food such as sausages, bacon, kippers (herring – a type of fish – which has been covered in salt and smoked), black pudding, scrambled or fried or poached egg, mushrooms, fried tomatoes, baked beans, hash browns and toast. People sometimes eat a boiled egg, dipping (dunking) strips of toast (soldiers) into the egg yolk. A continental breakfast is a small meal and is not cooked; for example, a bread roll or croissant with cheese or ham and a cup of coffee. The most common drinks at this time of day are orange juice or a cup of breakfast tea.

Many people have a tea-break at about 11:00 in the morning (elevenses). If a meal is eaten in the late morning instead of both breakfast and lunch, it is called brunch.

Lunch (sometimes called more formally luncheon) is the meal eaten in the middle of the day (usually between about 12:30 and 2:00). Many people eat a sandwich (also known as a butty or sarnie in some parts of the UK). Some people have a simple meal such as cheese and biscuits or soup and bread. A ploughman's lunch is a traditional lunch for farmers: a bread roll, Cheddar cheese, Branston pickle and salad, perhaps with a pork pie. It is also traditional for people to go to a pub with some friends for a pub lunch and a drink.

A Sunday roast is a traditional meal eaten by a family at Sunday lunchtime; for example, roast beef with roast potatoes, parsnips, peas, Brussels sprouts, green beans, Yorkshire pudding, bread sauce and gravy. Mint sauce or redcurrant jelly is often eaten with lamb, apple sauce with pork, and horseradish sauce (a type of mustard) with beef, cranberry sauce with turkey. Stuffing may be eaten with chicken or turkey.

Did you know?

If someone asks you if you 'would like a cuppa', they are asking if you would like a cup of tea. If someone says 'let me be mother' or 'shall I be mother', they are offering to pour out the tea from the teapot.

Tea-time is a small meal eaten in the late afternoon (usually between about 3:30 and 5:00). People may drink tea, and often eat biscuits (American English: cookies), cakes or savoury foods such as sandwiches, crumpets or tea-cakes. Occasionally people may have a full afternoon tea or a cream tea: this includes a

scone with jam and cream (usually either whipped cream or thick clotted cream) as well as a selection of sandwiches and cakes.

High tea is a light meal eaten in the early evening (for example, 6 o'clock) served with a pot of tea; this is popular in north England and Scotland. Supper is

the most common name for the meal eaten in the evening (usually between 7:00 and 8:30). Dinner is another common name for supper, but sometimes it is also used to refer to lunch, especially when this is the main meal of the day. A dinner party is a formal evening meal to which guests have been invited. A common type of cooked meal in Britain is meat and two veg. This is a meat dish served together on the same plate with two types of vegetable, one of which is often a type of potato. It is common to eat a dessert (also known as a pudding, or informally as afters) after the main dish.

It is increasingly popular for British people get a takeaway or go to a restaurant instead of cooking at home, and often this is used as a chance to try different types of food. Most towns have an Indian restaurant, serving foods such as curry and chicken tikka masala. Chinese restaurants are also very common; popular dishes include sweet and sour pork and aromatic duck. Many people like Italian pizza and pasta dishes. Fast food restaurants often serve beefburgers or fried chicken. Fish and chip shops are still popular, especially in towns by the coast. There is an old tradition of eating fish on Friday.

British people enjoy eating snacks between meals. These include sweets (American English: candy) and crisps (American English: chips).

## DIALOGUES

### **At the Fast Food Restaurant.**

*Sam:* Next in line.

*Keiko:* Yes, I want a chicken sandwich and some water, please.

*Sam:* Will that be for here or to go?

*Keiko:* For here, please.

*Sam:* Will there be anything else?

*Keiko:* That is everything, thanks.

*Sam:* Your total is six dollars.

*Keiko:* OK. Here you go.

*Sam:* Out of ten dollars. Four is your change. That will be just a minute.

*Keiko:* Thank you.

### **Ordering a Meal**

*Waiter:* Hello, Can I help you?

*Kim:* Yes, I'd like to have some lunch.

*Waiter:* Would you like a starter?

*Kim:* Yes, I'd like a bowl of chicken soup, please.

*Waiter:* And what would you like for a main course?

*Kim:* I'd like a grilled cheese sandwich.

*Waiter:* Would you like anything to drink?

*Kim:* Yes, I'd like a glass of Coke, please.

*Waiter...* After Kim has her lunch.: Can I bring you anything else?

*Kim:* No thank you. Just the bill.

*Waiter:* Certainly.

*Kim:* I don't have my glasses. How much is the lunch?

*Waiter:* That's \$6.75.

*Kim:* Here you are. Thank you very much.

*Waiter:* You're welcome. Have a good day.

*Kim:* Thank you, the same to you.

## **Cooking**

*(At a friend's house)*

*Carol:* This is a lovely house!

*Martha:* Thank you. Carol, we call it home.

*Carol:* It's very close to work, isn't it?

*Martha:* Yes, it is. I always walk to work - even when it rains!

*Carol:* I usually take the bus. It takes so long!

*Martha:* How long does it take?

*Carol:* Oh, it takes about 20 minutes.

*Martha:* That is a long time. Well, have some cake.

*Carol:* *(Taking a bite of some cake)* This is delicious! Do you bake all of your own cakes?

*Martha:* Yes, I usually bake something at the weekend. I like having sweets in the house.

*Carol:* You're a wonderful cook!

*Martha:* Thank you, it's nothing really.

*Carol:* I never cook. I'm just hopeless. My husband, David, usually does all the cooking.

*Martha:* Do you often go out to eat?

*Carol:* Yes, when he doesn't have time to cook, we go out to eat somewhere.

*Martha:* There are some wonderful restaurants in the city.

*Carol:* Too many! You can eat at a different restaurant every day. Monday - Chinese, Tuesday - Italian, Wednesday - Mexican, on and so on ...

## **Ordering Lunch and Dinner**

*Waiter:* Are you ready to order, sir?

*Mr Ryefield:* Yes. I'll have the beef stew for starters and my wife would like tomato soup.

*Waiter:* One beef stew and one tomato soup. What would you like for the main course?

*Mr Ryefield:* I'll have the Cayenne Pepper Steak and my wife would like the Fried Trout with mashed potatoes.

*Waiter:* I'm afraid the trout is off.

*Mrs Ryefield:* Oh dear. Err... What else do you recommend?

*Waiter:* The sole is very good.  
*Mrs Ryefield:* OK. I'll have that. Do you have any coleslaw?  
*Waiter:* No, I'm sorry, we don't.  
*Mrs Ryefield:* Just give me a small mixed salad then.  
*Mr Ryefield:* Same for me.  
*Waiter:* Certainly. Would you like something to drink?  
*Mr Ryefield:* Yes, please. May I see the wine list?  
*Waiter:* Certainly. Here you are.  
*Mr Ryefield:* A bottle of Chablis '99, please.  
*Waiter:* Excellent choice!

### *EXERCISES*

#### **1. Give a word that means:**

- 1) a dish you have after the main course, for example, ice-cream;
- 2) very heavy and hard to digest (begins with s);
- 3) cooked with heat coming from above (for example, for a sausage or burger);
- 4) cooked in the oven, with a little fat or oil (for example, for a whole chicken);
- 5) that something is not cooked enough.

#### **2. Fill in a bag of, a bottle of, a tube of, a piece of, a loaf of, a can of, a carton of, a box of, a bar of:**

dog food	pie	mineral water	wine
sardines	potatoes	bread	toothpaste
chocolate	mustard	cake	
potato chips	olives	sugar	
milk	fruit juice	oranges	

#### **3. Complete these sentences with a suitable word. The first letter of the missing word is given:**

1. There are four vegetables I really hate: peppers, courgettes, m.....  
and a.....
2. We had a delicious salad of tomato, cucumber and l.....
3. The dessert was fresh fruit: there was a large bowl of strawberries, peaches,  
c..... and p.....
4. I'm always ill if I eat certain shellfish like shrimps, o..... or  
m.....
5. I'm a vegetarian, so I don't eat beef, pork, lamb or v.....

#### **4. Put the letters in the following words into the correct order and write them into the gaps:**

*Example:* estak - steak



- 1) wdanschi; 2) dbare; 3) lcoa; 4) trwae; 5) ubrtte; 6) ikml; 7) dlaas; 8) eta;  
 9) ttsoa; 10) cie-rmeca; 11) pinsach; 12) rlfuo; 13) llor; 14) eeoiff; 15) apgreifrut;  
 16) neiw; 17) spscri; 18) ussaage; 19) epa; 20) oehyn.

**5. Match the words on the left with the examples/definitions on the right:**

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 1. bitter     | a. a lot of sugar                         |
| 2. sour       | b. no flavour at all                      |
| 3. hot, spicy | c. pleasant, slightly salty or with herbs |
| 4. sweet      | d. has a good taste/flavour               |
| 5. bland      | e. e.g. fruit which is not ripe           |
| 6. salty      | f. like a beautiful, ripe strawberry      |
| 7. sugary     | g. sharp/unpleasant                       |
| 8. savoury    | h. e.g. a strong Indian curry             |
| 9. tasty      | i. a lot of salt                          |
| 10. tasteless | j. rather negative, very little flavour   |

**6. Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage:**

<i>recipe</i>	<i>take-away</i>	<i>dish</i>	<i>tip</i>
<i>menu</i>	<i>eat out</i>	<i>snack</i>	<i>cookery books</i>
<i>fast food</i>	<i>waiter</i>	<i>bill</i>	<i>ingredients</i>

I'm a terrible cook. I've tried hard but it's no use. I've got lots of (a)....., I choose a (b)..... I want to cook, I read the (c)....., I prepare all the necessary (d)..... and follow the instructions. But the result is terrible, and I just have a sandwich or some other quick (e)..... . So I often (f)..... .

I don't like grand restaurants. It's not the expense, it's just that I don't feel at ease in them. First the (g)..... gives me a (h)..... which I can't understand because it's complicated and has lots of foreign words. At the end of the meal when I pay the (i)..... I never know how much to leave as a (j)..... . I prefer (k)..... places, like hamburger shops where you pay at once and sit down and eat straightaway. And I like (l)..... where you buy a meal in a special container and take it home.

**7. Explain the meaning of the following proverbs in English and translate them into Ukrainian:**

- The proof of the pudding is in the eating.
- You can't eat a cake and have it.
- The appetite comes with eating.
- Man does not live by bread alone.
- Too many cooks spoil the broth.

- First catch your hare then cook him.
- You cannot make an omelette without breaking eggs.
- Enough is as good as a feast.
- Hunger is the best sauce.
- Tastes differ.
- Too much food makes you fat, too little food makes you dead.
- After dinner sit a while, after supper walk a mile.
- Eat at pleasure, drink with measure.
- An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
- Hunger breaks stone walls.

**8. Are these sentences true or false? If they are false, correct them:**

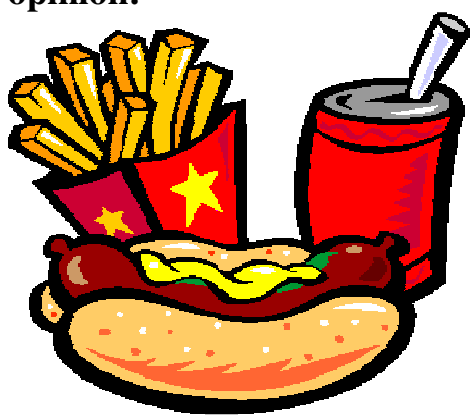
1. Lobster is a kind of fruit.
2. Salad is usually a mixture of uncooked vegetables.
3. A lamb is a baby sheep; lamb is also the name of the meat of that animal.
4. A calf is a young pig.
5. Salmon is a kind of shellfish.
6. Oil and vinegar are often used with a green salad.
7. Peas, courgettes, aubergines and cucumbers are all the same colour.

**9. Answer the questions:**

1. Are you a good cook?
2. Are you concerned about your daily calorie intake when choosing something to eat?
3. At what times do you usually eat your meals (breakfast, lunch, and dinner)?
4. Do you always eat dinner with your family?
5. Do you always eat vegetables?
6. Do you eat breakfast every day?
7. Do you eat fruit every day?
8. Do you have a favorite bar or cafe? If so, where is it? Why do you like it?
9. Do you like food from other countries? If yes, which do you like the most?
10. Do you like peas and carrots? How about spinach?
11. Do you like to eat at fast food restaurants?
12. What is junk food? Do you like to eat it?
13. Do you often eat out?
14. Do you prefer fish or meat?
15. Do you prefer your own country's food or other kinds of food?
16. Do you read the nutritional information on the foods you buy?
17. Do you take vitamin pills?
18. Do you think a vegetarian diet is better than a diet that includes meat?
19. How much do you eat when you are sad or happy?
20. How often do you go shopping for food?

21. Is there any food that you really dislike to eat?
22. What foods have you tasted which you will never forget for the rest of your life?
23. What is the cheapest place to eat that you know?
24. Does your family have any special recipes that are passed down from generation to generation?
25. Have you ever left a restaurant without paying ("dined and dashed")?

**10. In Britain, a lot of people say that teenagers do not eat good food. Television chefs have tried to encourage teenagers and young people to eat better food; but still, large numbers of British youth prefer a daily diet of hamburgers and other fast food. *Freeway* magazine asked some British teenagers for their opinion on the matter. Read the dialogue and express your opinion:**



**FREEWAY:** People say that today's young people like nothing apart from "fast food"; do you think this is true? and what do you think of fast food?

**GORDON:** I don't have anything against it, really! It's O.K! I mean, you hear people saying it's all junk food, but most of the time it tastes good.

**DANNY:** Yeah, if you mean hamburgers and whatever, there's nothing wrong with them. They're good food! They fill you up; and that's what food's supposed to do, isn't it? I mean there's meat, vegetables and bread and cheese; as far as I'm concerned, that's a pretty balanced diet.

**GORDON:** Yeah, hamburgers are all right. I mean, my mum says it's all junk, but frankly I can't really see what makes it any different from the stuff she cooks. I mean bread's bread, isn't it, and steak's steak, as far as I'm concerned.

**KATHY:** I tend to agree. Like, personally I'm not all that keen on hamburgers – they just make you fat – but if you go to a McDonald's or somewhere like that, you can get salads and things too....

**JO:** Well yes, 'course you can, but that's not the point, is it? I mean the thing about junk food is that it's all deep frozen, it's never fresh....

**KATHY:** What d'you mean? You can't get deep-frozen salads...

**JO:** Well maybe not the salads... but the rest's all deep frozen industrial stuff.

**GORDON:** But so's most of the food you get these days...

**JO:** It isn't at all! What about all the organic stuff, and fresh meat and things like that.

GORDON: Yes, OK... but who says it's any better than deep frozen stuff?

DANNY: It certainly doesn't taste better, and it's much more hassle.

FREEWAY: Don't you eat fresh food at home then?

DANNY: Yeah, of course, from time to time; but most of the time my mum does stuff out of the deep freeze. It's good!

JO: What sort of stuff?

DANNY: All sorts of stuff. Pizzas, fish fingers, lasagna, things like that.

JO: You're not really suggesting that deep frozen pizza's as good as the real thing, are you?

DANNY: What d'you mean 'the real thing'? Deep frozen pizza's perfectly real, and fine by me... once it's been heated up, I mean!

KATHY: Anyway, who eats home-made pizza at home anyway? No-one does! D'you?

JO: No, 'cos I'm a vegetarian!

KATHY: That doesn't stop you eating pizza, does it?

JO: It depends what kind of pizza it is, doesn't it? I mean I love a good vegetarian pizza.

DANNY: D'you eat cheese then?

JO: Yes, I'm not vegan.

GORDON: I think you've got to be sensible about it really: like as I said, I like hamburgers, but I wouldn't want to go round eating them every day; and there's some things that are better than others, obviously. I mean, look at chicken nuggets for instance. People think they're eating meat, but they're 90% nugget and only 10% meat. I reckon things like that are a rip off; you're really being conned!

JO: But it's the same with all junk food, isn't it?

GORDON: What d'you know about it? You just said you were a veggie!

JO: Yeah, I am now, but I didn't use to be! If you want to know, the reason I went vegetarian is because I got sick of tasteless junk food.

DANNY: Maybe you ate the wrong stuff! Most of the things I eat are pretty tasty, to be quite honest!

JO: Yeah, I'm sure they are! But it's all done with chemicals and flavourings, isn't it? You never know what you're eating!

DANNY: So what, it's not poison, is it? You can kill yourself by eating poisonous mushrooms, can't you, and they're quite natural...

GORDON: And organic...

JO: Well look at mad cow disease...



GORDON: Well that was an extreme case, wasn't it? An' anyway, how many people have caught it? About twenty! Probably as many as died from eating bad fruit....

**10. Read and translate the text about the eating etiquette in Britain. Does it differ from Ukrainian one?**

The British generally pay a lot of attention to good table manners. Even young children are expected to eat properly with knife and fork.

We eat most of our food with cutlery. The foods we don't eat with a knife, fork or spoon include sandwiches, crisps, corn on the cob, and fruit.

***Things you should do:***

If you cannot eat a certain type of food or have some special needs, tell your host several days before the dinner party.

If you are a guest, it is polite to wait until your host starts eating or indicates you should do so. It shows consideration.

Always chew and swallow all the food in your mouth before taking more or taking a drink.

Always say thank you when served something. It shows appreciation.

You may eat chicken and pizza with your fingers if you are at a barbecue, finger buffet or very informal setting. Otherwise always use a knife and fork.

When eating rolls, break off a piece of bread before buttering. Eating it whole looks tacky.

On formal dining occasions it is good manners to take some butter from the butter dish with your bread knife and put it on your side plate (for the roll). Then butter pieces of the roll using this butter. This prevents the butter in the dish getting full of bread crumbs as it is passed around.

In a restaurant, it is normal to pay for your food by putting your money on the plate the bill comes on.

When you have finished eating, and to let others know that you have, place your knife and fork together, with the prongs (tines) on the fork facing upwards, on your plate.

***Things you should not do:***

Never lick or put your knife in your mouth.

It is impolite to start eating before everyone has been served unless your host says that you don't need to wait.

Never chew with your mouth open. No one wants to see food being chewed or hearing it being chomped on.

It is impolite to have your elbows on the table while you are eating.

Don't reach over someone's plate for something, ask for the item to be passed.

Never talk with food in your mouth.

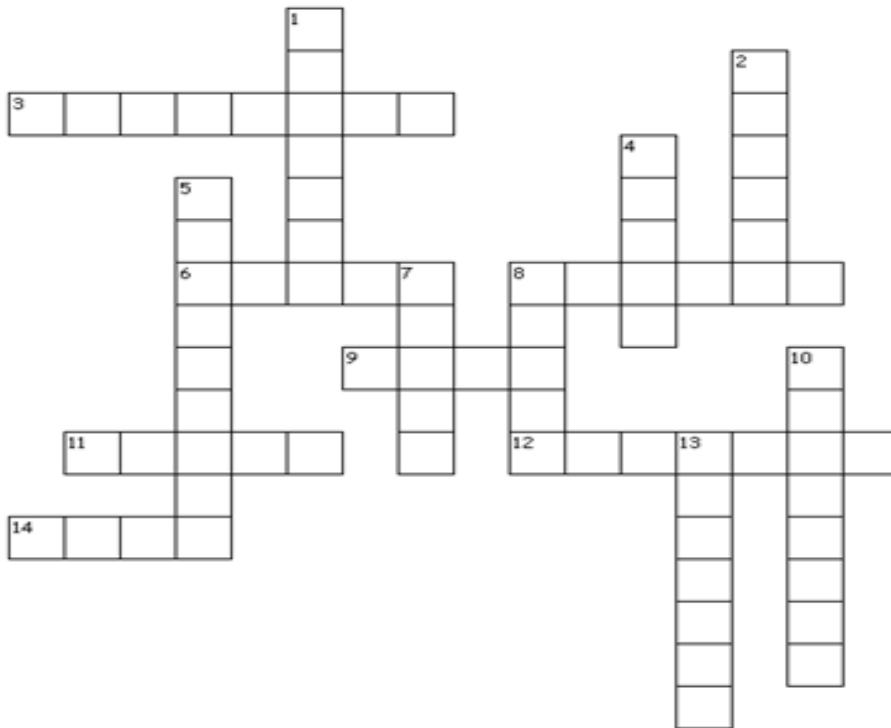
It is impolite to put too much food in your mouth.

Never use your fingers to push food onto your spoon or fork.

It is impolite to slurp your food or eat noisily.  
 Never blow your nose on a napkin (serviette). Napkins are for dabbing your lips and only for that.  
 Never take food from your neighbours plate.  
 Never pick food out of your teeth with your fingernails.

(<http://projectbritain.com/behaviourfood.html>)

### 11. Have a fun! Crossword “Meals”



#### Across

- 3.** a small circular cake, fried in hot fat, either with a hole in the middle or filled with jam;  
**6.** the solid substance which forms when milk turns sour;  
**8.** a food made from a mixture of flour, fat and water, which is rolled flat and wrapped round or put over or under other foods and baked;  
**9.** an open pastry case with a filling, usually of something sweet such as fruit;  
**11.** the thick yellowish-white liquid that forms on the top of milk;  
**12.** a slightly sour, thick liquid made from milk with bacteria added to it, sometimes sweetened and with a fruit flavour added and sometimes eaten plain;  
**14.** the food and drink usually eaten or drunk by a person or group.

#### Down

- 1.** a sharp tasting liquid made especially from sour wine malt or cider which is used to add flavour to or to preserve food;

- 2. the eggs of various large fish, especially the sturgeon, which are eaten as food and are usually very expensive;
- 4. sliced bread made warm, crisp and brown by being put near a high heat;
- 5. small dark grain used for feeding animals and for making flour;
- 7. a small amount of food that is eaten between meals, or a very small meal;
- 8. a piece of food made into a disc shape which is then cooked;
- 10. a meal frame on which meat, fish or vegetables are cooked outside over a fire;
- 13. a long silvery coloured fish which swims in large groups in the sea, or its flesh eaten as food.

## 12. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Його улюблений сніданок обов'язково включає підсмажений бекон, тости з джемом і чай. 2. Англійці п'ють чай з вершками та цукром. 3. Англійці не п'ють чай з лимоном. Такий чай вони називають «російський чай». 4. Англійці віддають перевагу простій їжі: смаженій рибі з картоплею, овочам і будь-якій м'ясній страві. 5. Наша сім'я любить овочі, і влітку і взимку мама часто готує нам кабачок, фарширований рисом і м'ясним фаршем. 6. Офіціант порекомендував нам на перше грибний суп зі сметаною, на друге – копченого лосося з картоплею фрі, а на десерт – морозиво з малиновим сиропом. 7. Дозвольте запропонувати вам ще чашку кави? – Дякую. Не кладіть багато цукру, будь ласка. Двох шматків достатньо. – Ну що ж. Про смаки не сперечаються. 8. Пора вечеряти. Що сьогодні на вечерю? – Телячі відбивні зі смаженою картоплею і чай з печивом. 9. Чим Вас пригостити? Спробуйте салат. – Спасибі, я вже його їв. Дуже смачно. – Дозвольте тоді запропонувати вам шинки або сиру. – Дякую, із задоволенням візьму скибочку шинки з гірчицею. 10. Передайте, будь ласка, сільницю. – Пробачте, в ній дуже мало солі. Я зараз принесу ще. 11. Що ти замовив на друге? – Ще нічого, але замовлю котлети з макаронами – А я віддаю перевагу картоплі та іншим овочам, тому я візьму курку з пюре. 12. Лікар радив мені їсти більше фруктів і дотримуватися дієти. 13. Я так хочу пити! Сьогодні дуже спекотно. 14. Щоб приготувати мій улюблений морквяний салат, я беру три великі морквини, тру їх на терці, дрібно ріжу голівку часнику, додаю родзинки, все перемішую і запраляю салат майонезом. 15. Зараз дуже багато хто захоплюється вегетаріанською їжею. Вони їдять будь-які овочі – картоплю, моркву, буряк, цвітну капусту, горох, салат, але зовсім не їдять м'яса.

## III. GRAMMAR

### 1) The Present Perfect Tense

The Present Perfect Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Present Indefinite Tense (*has in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular*) and Participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I We } <b>have</b> You They  } read He She } <b>has</b> It	<b>Have</b> I We They You  } read He <b>Has</b> She It	I We } <b>have not (haven't)</b> You They  } read He She } <b>has not (hasn't)</b> It

**The Present Perfect Tense** is used:

- 1) when we are interested in the result of the action; in this case there may no time indication in the sentence at all.  
*e.g. I have done my exercises. Here they are.*
- 2) when we are interested in the action itself but not in the time of its completion; in this case the adverbs of the indefinite time are often used (*just, already, yet, ever, never, always, often, twice, several times*), when they do not refer to the definite moment in the past.  
*e.g. I have already done my exercises and now I am learning the poem.*  
*Have you ever been to this museum?*
- 3) With adverbs denoting a period of time which is not over: *today, tonight, this week (month, year, century), lately, recently.*  
*e.g. I have seen this film twice this week.*

**The Present Perfect Tense** is used also to express an action which began in the past and is not completed in the moment of speaking. The following verbs are generally used in this case: *to be, to know, to live, to see* and some others. In this case either the starting point (*since*) or the whole period of duration is indicated (*for*).

- e.g. I have not seen her since 2008.*  
*I have not seen her for two years.*

### **Exercises:**

#### **I. Fill the gaps with 'have' or 'has'.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ answered the question.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ opened the window.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ called us.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ carried a box.
5. It \_\_\_\_\_ rained a lot.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ washed the car.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ closed the window.
8. Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ locked the door.
9. The girls \_\_\_\_\_ visited the museum.
10. John and Sophie \_\_\_\_\_ helped in the garden.

#### **II. Put the verbs into the correct form (the Present Perfect Tense):**

1. I (not / work) today.
2. We (buy) a new lamp.



3. We (not / plan) our holiday yet.
4. Where (be / you) ?
5. He (write) five letters.
6. She (not / see) him for a long time.
7. (be / you) at school?
8. School (not / start) yet.
9. (speak / he) to his boss?
10. No, he (have / not) the time yet.

**III. Write questions in the *Present Perfect Tense*:**

1. you / answer / the question
2. Jenny / lock / the door
3. Walter / call / us
4. you / see / the picture
5. your parents / get / the letter
6. it / rain / a lot
7. how often / we / sing / the song
8. Maureen / watch / the film
9. how many books / Bob / read
10. ever / you / be / to London

**IV. Complete the table in the *Present Perfect Tense*:**

Positive	Negative	Question
We have chatted.		
	The lesson has not started.	
		Have we won?
She has turned around.		
	They have not arrived.	
		Has she phoned?
They have read the book.		
	She hasn't read the text.	
He has taken your book.		
		Have you discussed this question?
		Has he written the letter?

**V. Ask for the information in the bold part of the sentence:**

1. They have seen him **at the library**. –
2. Robby Robber has robbed **another bank**. –
3. Bill has ordered **three** desserts. –
4. Clara has repeated the sentence **five times**. –
5. **Jane** has asked a question. –

## 2) *Past Indefinite or Present Perfect?*

In British English, the use of *the Past Indefinite Tense* and *the Present Perfect* is quite strict. As soon as a time expression in the past is given, you have to use *Simple Past*. If there are no signal words, you must decide if we just talk about an action in the past or if its consequence in the present is important.

Note that the following explanations and exercises refer to British English only. In American English, you can normally use Simple Past instead of Present Perfect.

### Signal Words

<i>Past Indefinite Tense</i>	<i>Present Perfect Tense</i>
yesterday	already
... ago	just
the other day	up to now
last ...	ever
in 1990	so far
	until now / till now
	(not) yet
	lately / recently

### *Exercises:*

#### **I. Put the verbs into the correct tense (*Past Indefinite* or *Present Perfect*):**

1. (you / see) Bob recently?
2. Who (switch) off the lights a minute ago?
3. (you / ride / ever) an elephant?
4. (you / hurt) your knee when you were playing football?
5. Last week I (be) very busy and I (have not) the time to do a lot in the household.
6. On Monday I (work) three hours overtime and (come) home very late in the evening.
7. From Tuesday to Thursday I (be) on a business trip.
8. On Friday I (go) to a friend's birthday party and at the weekend I (visit) my grandparents.
9. Tomorrow some friends are coming over. I (see / not) them for ages and they (be / never) at my place before.
10. I (clean / just) my house so I can show them around. Now everything is perfect.

#### **II. Put the verbs into the correct tense (*Past Indefinite* or *Present Perfect*):**

1. A: (you / play / already) the new computer game?
2. B: No, not yet. I only (buy) it yesterday and I (have / not) the time yet.
3. A: (you / go) to the cinema last night?
4. B: Yes. I (be) there with Sue and Louis. (you / be) to the cinema recently?
5. A: I last (go) to the cinema two weeks ago.

6. B: So you (see / not) the new action film yet.
7. A: No, unfortunately not. (you / enjoy) it?
8. B: Oh, I really (love) it. But Sue (like / not) it - too much action!
9. A: But why (you / take) her with you? She (tell) me last week that she (hate) action films.
10. B: I think she has an eye on Louis. She (try) to flirt with him all the time. So he (can / concentrate / not) on the film

### III. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. A: Has Lucy always wanted to be a TV presenter?  
B: Yes, she does. Ever since she was 16 years old.
2. Lucy is knowing lots of different people. She meets them on her show.
3. She recently interviews a boyband from the USA.
4. Her appearance is important so she buys often new clothes.
5. It's 430 a.m., but Lucy isn't wanting to get up.
6. She isn't needing to eat breakfast. She's had a bar of chocolate.
7. Look! Someone famous arrives at the studio.
8. At the moment they watch breakfast TV.
9. I've had a computer for two years, but I never sent an email.
10. A: Has Rachel always wanted to be a fashion designer?  
B: Yes, she does. Ever since she was at school.
11. Have you ever been playing a computer game?
12. I've bought a pair of combat trousers last week.

### IV. Put the verbs into the correct tense (*Past Indefinite* or *Present Perfect*):

1. We (empty / not) the bin last week.
2. She (be / not) there an hour ago.
3. He (lose / not) any game so far.
4. My brother (pick / not) me up at 8 o'clock.
5. I (make / not) up my mind yet.
6. (you / see) Bob recently?
7. Who (switch) off the lights a minute ago?
8. When (she / become) a teacher?
9. (you / ride / ever) an elephant?
10. (you / hurt) your knee when you were playing football?

### V. Test. Present Tenses. Choose the correct variant:

1. You may take this magazine. I ..... through it already.
  - a) look
  - b) have looked
  - c) am looking
  - d) have been looking

2. .... you a ride home yet since he started working in your department?
  - a) Has Sam been giving
  - b) Does Sam give
  - c) Is Sam giving
  - d) Has Sam given
3. I have read this chapter in my chemistry text three times, and still I ..... it.
  - a) haven't understood
  - b) don't understand
  - c) understand
  - d) have understood
4. As far as I know Mike ..... Italian for quite some time, but he still doesn't understand very much.
  - a) is learning
  - b) has been learning
  - c) has learnt
  - d) learns
5. For many years American schools ..... federal aid for special purposes.
  - a) receive
  - b) have received
  - c) have been receiving
  - d) are receiving
6. What ..... with yourself? There is mud all over you!
  - a) has you been doing
  - b) are you doing
  - c) did you do
  - d) have you been doing
7. How long ..... a course of lectures on Medieval History?
  - a) does Professor Donaldson deliver
  - b) is Professor Donaldson delivering
  - c) has Professor Donaldson been delivering
  - d) has Professor Donaldson delivered
8. Anne is a fashion designer; she ..... to the opening of every new fashion show in the city.
  - a) goes
  - b) is going
  - c) has gone
  - d) has been going
9. My cousin Jake has got a lot of books, most of which he ..... .
  - a) doesn't read
  - b) hasn't been reading
  - c) hasn't read
  - d) isn't reading

10. About 85 percent of American students ..... public schools, which are supported by state and local taxes.
- a) attend
  - b) are attending
  - c) have attended
  - d) have been attending
11. How long ..... Jerry? - But I don't know him at all. I have never met him.
- a) do you know
  - b) have you known
  - c) has you known
  - d) did you know
12. Today the world ..... so rapidly; things never stay the same.
- a) changes
  - b) has changed
  - c) is changing
  - d) has been changing
13. Zeta has sent me two letters; neither of which ..... .
- a) has arrived
  - b) have arrived
  - c) arrive
  - d) is arriving
14. I am tired. We ..... for more than an hour. Let's stop and rest for a while.
- a) have been walking
  - b) are walking
  - c) walk
  - d) have walked
15. Willy ..... from his Uncle Alex since the latter immigrated to Canada.
- a) does not hear
  - b) have not heard
  - c) has not heard
  - d) is not hearing

#### ***IV. WRITING***

**Write an essay on one of the following topics:**

- 1. My Favourite Dish.**
- 2. Healthy Food.**
- 3. Why is Fast Food So Popular Nowadays?**

## UNIT 2

### SHOPPING

#### I. TEXT

##### Harrods Knightsbridge

*(World Famous Department Store )*



The original Harrods Store in Knightsbridge offers a **worthwhile experience** even for those for whom shopping is a **turn off**. The 4,000 staff at Harrods includes 500 specialists embracing 72 different nationalities. Experts in almost every **department** advise on each and every aspect of the store's 1.2 million **goods** and 50 separate services.

Many departments have their own separate advice desks to answer customer **queries**. The attention to detail is endless.

Most people marvel at the **luxury merchandise** and services only purchasing a bag of sweets from the food hall. But ...

The store occupies a 4.5-acre site and has over one million square feet of selling space in over 330 departments. This makes Harrods one of the largest department stores in the world.

The store's 330 departments **offer** a wide **range** of products and services. Products on offer include clothing for every sort of customer (women, men, children, and infants), electronics, **jewellery**, **sporting gear**, **bridal** things, **pet accessories**, toys, food and drink, health and beauty **items**, packaged **gifts**, **stationery**, house wares, **home appliances**, furniture, and much more.



A representative sample of store services includes 28 restaurants, serving everything; a personal shopping-assistance programme known as "By Appointment"; a watch repair service; a **tailor**; a **dispensing pharmacy**; a beauty and **spa salon**; a **barbers shop**; Harrods Financial Services; Harrods Bank; private events planning and **catering**; food delivery; a wine steward; "**picnic**" **hampers** and gift boxes.

Up to 300,000 customers visit the store on peak days. More than five thousand staff from over fifty different countries work at Harrods. A fleet of fifty delivery vehicles make up to 225,000 deliveries every year. Approximately 11,500 energy-efficient light bulbs turn Harrods into a **beacon** of light each night.

(<http://www.londontoolkit.com/whattodo/harrods.htm>)

## Vocabulary Notes

**worthwhile** – *adj* important or useful, even though you have to spend time, effort, or money doing it (цінний)

*E.g.* It's worthwhile comparing prices.

**experience** – *n* [uncount] knowledge or skill that you learn when you do something yourself, or when something happens to you (досвід)

*E.g.* He's a very good teacher with a lot of experience.

**turn off** – *n* [count] a place where you can leave a main road to go onto a smaller one (поворот)

**department** – *n* [count] one of the parts of a large organization such as a college, government, or company (відділ)

*E.g.* The marketing department.

**goods** – *n* [plural] things that are produced in order to be sold (товар)

*E.g.* The shop sells a wide range of goods.

**query** [kwɪəri] – *n* [count] a question asking for more information (питання)

*E.g.* Staff are always available to answer your queries.

**luxury** – *n* [uncount] great comfort and pleasure, especially from beautiful or expensive things (розкіш)

*E.g.* They lived a life of luxury.

**merchandise** – *n* [uncount] *formal* goods that are being sold (товари)

**to offer** – *v* [trans] to ask someone if they would like something, or to hold something out for them to take (запропонувати)

*offer somebody something*

*E.g.* Can I offer you a drink?

*offer something to somebody*

*E.g.* Simon lit a cigarette and then offered one to Ben.

**range** – *n* [count] a group of things that are different, but belong to the same general type (діапазон)

*range of*

*E.g.* The Centre provides a range of services for the elderly.

*wide/whole/full etc range of something* (=lots of very different things)

*E.g.* A wide range of subjects are on offer.

**jewellery** – *n* [uncount] small things that you wear for decoration, such as rings and necklaces (коштовності)

*E.g.* a piece of gold jewellery,

**sporting gear** – *n* [uncount] special equipment, clothing etc that you need for a particular activity (спорттовари)

**bridal** – *adj* relating to a bride or a wedding (для нареченої)

*E.g.* a bridal gown

**pet** – *n* [count] an animal that you keep at home (домашні улюбленці)

*E.g.* Cats are popular pets.

**accessory** – *n* [count] something such as a bag, belt, or jewellery that you wear or carry because it is attractive (аксесуари)

*E.g.* fashion accessories

**item** – *n* [count] a single thing of a particular type or in a set or list: item of clothing/furniture/equipment etc (товар)

*E.g.* What was the last item of clothing you bought?

**gift** – *n* [count] something that you give to someone as a present (подарунок)

**stationery** – *n* [uncount] things such as paper or pens that you use for writing (канцелярські товари)

**home appliances** – *n* [count] a piece of electrical equipment, such as a refrigerator or a washing machine, that is used in people's homes (товари домашнього вжитку)

**tailor** – *n* [count] someone whose job is to make men's clothes that are measured to fit each customer exactly (кравець)

**dispensing pharmacy** – a shop preparing and giving medicines to people (аптека)

**spa** [spa] **salon** – *n* [count] a place where people go to improve their health, especially because the water has special minerals in it (спа салон)

**barber** – *n* [count] a man whose job is to cut men's hair (чоловічий перукар)

**catering** – *n* [uncount] the job of providing and serving food and drinks at parties, meetings etc (доставка їжі)

*E.g.* the catering industry

**"picnic" hamper** – *n* [count] a large basket for carrying food (кошик для пікніка)

**beacon** – *n* [count] a light or electronic signal, used to guide boats, planes etc (маяк)

## EXERCISES

### I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:

1. цінний досвід;
2. персонал налічує 500 спеціалістів;
3. окремі послуги;
4. відповідати на питання клієнтів;
5. пропонувати широкий діапазон товарів і послуг;



6. купуючи лише пакет цукерок;
7. запаковані подарунки;
8. спорттовари;
9. автомобілі доставки;
10. енергозберігаючі лампочки.

**II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:**

*merchandise, peak, service, world, pet, sample, site, dispensing, original, department.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Harrods Store;
2. experts in almost every \_\_\_\_\_;
3. luxury \_\_\_\_\_;
4. a 4.5-acre \_\_\_\_\_;
5. one of the largest department stores in the \_\_\_\_\_;
6. \_\_\_\_\_ accessories;
7. representative \_\_\_\_\_ of store services;
8. a \_\_\_\_\_ pharmacy;
9. a watch repair \_\_\_\_\_;
10. to visit the store on \_\_\_\_\_ days.

**III. Fill in the correct prepositions:**

1. products \_\_\_\_\_ offer
2. most people marvel \_\_\_\_\_ the luxury merchandise and services
3. clothing \_\_\_\_\_ every sort \_\_\_\_\_ customer
4. turn Harrods \_\_\_\_\_ a beacon \_\_\_\_\_ light each night
5. the attention \_\_\_\_\_ detail is endless
6. has over one million square feet \_\_\_\_\_ selling space \_\_\_\_\_ over 330 departments
7. experts \_\_\_\_\_ almost every department advise \_\_\_\_\_ each and every aspect
8. "\_\_\_\_\_ Appointment"
9. staff \_\_\_\_\_ over fifty different countries work \_\_\_\_\_ Harrods
10. fleet \_\_\_\_\_ fifty delivery vehicles

**IV. Match the word with its explanation:**

1) <b>goods</b>	a) things such as paper or pens that you use for writing
2) <b>stationery</b>	b) a piece of electrical equipment, such as a refrigerator or a washing machine, that is used in people's homes
3) <b>jewellery</b>	c) something such as a bag, belt, or jewellery that you wear or carry because it is attractive
4) <b>department</b>	d) things that are produced in order to be sold
5) <b>home appliances</b>	e) special equipment, clothing etc that you need for a particular activity

6) <b>item</b>	f) a single thing of a particular type or in a set or list: item of clothing/furniture/equipment etc
7) <b>accessory</b>	g) small things that you wear for decoration
8) <b>sporting gear</b>	h) one of the parts of a large organization such as a college, government, or company

V. Study the text, put 10 questions to it and ask your group-mates to answer them.

VI. Retell the text.

## II. TOPIC

### Shopping



When we want to buy something, we go to a shop. In my early childhood going shopping was a holiday for me, especially when my granny took me with her. I knew for sure, I would get a sweet or a bar of chocolate or an ice-cream, all the things I enjoyed greatly.

Recently, shopping is no fun any longer, but my daily duty. And as all duties it is tiresome sometimes. I dream to be an economist, and maybe this dream printed on my approach to shopping. I try to be rational and economical. Once in a TV programme titled “A **Consumer’s** Basket” I heard some rules of behaviour while shopping and since then I try to follow them. Here they are. First of all it is necessary **to make a shopping list** of what we need. Then we should calculate how much our **purchases** would **cost** and take this very **sum of money** with us. The third rule tells that we shouldn’t be hungry while shopping, a hungry person buys the things his or her stomach dictates to buy, not thinking about **prices** or rational nutrition. And we shouldn’t go shopping immediately after we have got our **salary**, when we feel impressed by a large sum of money and don’t think it’s for a long month to last, not for a short moment when we feel rich and almighty.

Everyday shopping is rather traditional: some white and brown bread, some milk, butter, sugar, salt, eggs, some sausage or frankfurters. But it’s not necessary to visit different **provisional shops** such as **bakery, grocery** or **butchery** to buy

food for the family because we could buy foodstuffs in a **supermarket**. Different goods are sold under one roof, so customers can save their time having all goods bought in no time.

The method of shopping may vary. In a **self-service shop** a customer goes from **counter** to counter selecting and putting into a **basket** or **trolley** the goods he wants to buy. It's absolutely necessary **to check the dates** before which this or that foodstuff should be used, not to buy something of bad quality. Then a customer takes the basket to the **check-out counter** where the prices of the purchases are added up. If it's not a self-service shop and most small shops aren't, the **shop-assistant** helps the customer in finding and getting what he wants. After paying money to the **cashier** the customer can get his purchases.

Every day before leaving for University I look around the kitchen to see what we need. And on my way from University I **drop into the nearest supermarket**, fortunately enough it's not far from my house, and buy bread and other everyday essentials. Every Friday evening my Mum and I examine our kitchen more carefully as Saturday is our **shopping day**. The shopping list is rather long, so we both go shopping.

Mum and I go to the supermarket where we can buy different things at once: fish, bread, sausages, flour, tea, sugar, spices, eggs. I think that a bakery department is among the best in the shop as it has a rich choice of rolls, buns and biscuits. And what is more important they are always fresh and tasty. We all have a sweet tooth, so we never miss the confectionery, where we usually buy sweets, candies, chocolate bars, cakes and so on.

Another department of the supermarket, which we have to visit, is a **dairy**. At the dairy we buy milk, cream, yogurt, cheese, butter and other products. My Mum and I are **regular customers** at the **greengrocer's** where potatoes, carrots, cabbage, cucumbers, tomatoes, beetroots, oranges, apples and other fruits and vegetables are sold. But frankly speaking in summer we prefer buying fruits, berries and vegetables at the nearest **market**. They are fresher and cheaper there.

At the butcher's there's a wide choice of meat and poultry, such as beef, pork, mutton, chicken and turkey. It's really a great skill to choose a piece of meat you need, for soup or for chops or shashlyk, so it's my Mum who is to buy meat. I'm still to learn a lot in this sphere of shopping. Different cereals, flour, sugar, salt, tea, coffee, different spices can be found at the grocery.

Sometimes, not very often I should admit, I have to go to a **department store**. Any department store, true to its name, is composed of a number of departments where customers can buy everything they like: fabrics and footwear, china and glass, ready-made clothes and cosmetics, toys and electric appliances, furniture and sport goods, cameras and films, and what not. Nowadays some larger department stores contain a supermarket and coffee shops where customers can have a cup of coffee and a sandwich. Goods are displayed in the attractive window displays so even before entering we see a great amount of goods of high quality ready to meet our tastes and needs. But frankly speaking my family and I prefer

buying at the market, as it is cheaper there. Very often we have a richer choice of goods there as well.

I can't but say that our shops are becoming more and more European-like. Their halls, shelves, **adverts** attract more customers. Long **queues** are little by little disappearing from our life and shopping gets some element of fun and entertainment.

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

• Shopping	• Departments
<p><b>consumer</b> – споживач  <b>to make a shopping list</b> – скласти список покупок,  <b>purchases</b> – покупки,  <b>to cost (cost, cost)</b> – коштувати,  <b>sum of money</b> – сума грошей,  <b>price</b> – ціна, <b>salary</b> - зарплата,  <b>provisional shop</b> - продуктовий магазин,  <b>bakery</b> – хлібний магазин,  <b>grocery</b> – бакалія,  <b>butchery</b> – м'ясний магазин,  <b>dairy</b> – молочний магазин,  <b>supermarket</b> – супермаркет,  <b>self-service shop</b> – магазин самообслуговування,  <b>counter</b> – відділ, <b>basket</b> – кошик,  <b>trolley</b> – візок,  <b>to check the dates</b> – перевірити дату,  <b>check-out counter</b> – каса,  <b>shop-assistant</b> – продавець,  <b>cashier</b> – касир,  <b>to drop into the nearest supermarket</b> – заглянути в найближчий магазин,  <b>shopping day</b> – день покупок,  <b>greengrocer's</b> – овочевий магазин,  <b>regular customer</b> – постійний покупець, <b>market</b> – ринок,  <b>department store</b> – універмаг,  <b>adverts</b> – реклама, <b>queue</b> – черга</p>	<p><b>hosiery department</b> – панчішний відділ,  <b>millinery department</b> – відділ жіночих капелюхів,  <b>leather goods department</b> – відділ виробів зі шкіри,  <b>footwear department</b> – взуттєвий відділ,  <b>perfumery department</b> – відділ парфумів,  <b>glass-ware department</b> – відділ виробів зі скла,  <b>knitted goods department</b> – відділ трикотажних товарів,  <b>stationery department</b> – канцелярський відділ,  <b>furniture department</b> – відділ меблів,  <b>ready-made clothes department</b> – відділ готового одягу,  <b>haberdashery department</b> – галантерейний відділ.</p>

## Additional Vocabulary

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Asking for things</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>What the shopkeeper says</b></li> </ul>
<p>"Do you have any...?" – Чи є у вас...?</p> <p>"I'm looking for..." – Я шукаю...</p> <p>"I wonder if you could help me...?" – Цікаво, чи не могли б ви мені допомогти...?</p>	<p>"I'm sorry, that's the last one." – Вибачте, це останній.</p> <p>"I'm sorry, that's all we have left." – Вибачте, це все, що в нас залишилося.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>What a sales person says</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Your reply</b></li> </ul>
<p>"Can I help you?" – Чи можу я вам допомогти...?</p> <p>"Are you looking for anything in particular?" – Ви шукаєте щось особливе?</p>	<p>"I'm just looking, thank you." – Я просто дивлюся, дякую.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Asking about things</b></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Paying – what the shopkeeper says</b></li> </ul>
<p>"Do you have this in another size?" – Ви маєте це іншого розміру?</p> <p>"Do you have this in another colour?" – Ви маєте це іншого кольору?</p> <p>"Is this made of leather / silk / plastic...?" – Це зроблено зі шкіри / шовку / пластику...?</p> <p>"Does this come with a guarantee?" – На це є гарантія?</p> <p>"Can I bring this back if it's not the right size?" – Я можу повернути це, якщо розмір не підійде?</p> <p>"Can I bring this back if it doesn't fit?" – Я можу повернути це, якщо не підійде?</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Paying – what you say</b></li> </ul>
	<p>"Do you have anything smaller?" (If you pay with a large denomination note.) – Ви маєте дрібніші гроші?</p> <p>"I'm sorry, I don't have any small change." – Вибачте, у мене немає дрібних грошей.</p> <p>"Would you have change for this?" – У вас буде здача з цього?</p> <p>"Can I have the receipt, please?" – Можна мені чек, будь ласка?</p> <p>"Can I pay by credit card?" – Можна заплатити кредиткою?</p> <p>"Can I pay in cash?" – Можна заплатити готівкою?</p> <p>"Is this on sale?" – Це продається?</p>

### Types of shops in English

- department store* – a shop that sells many different items in different departments. Harrods is probably the world's best known department store.
- supermarket* – a large shop that sells mostly food and household items.
- grocer (UK) / grocery store (US)* – a shop that sells food.
- greengrocer* – sells fresh fruit and vegetables.
- butcher* - sells fresh meat.

**baker** – sells fresh bread and cakes.  
**fishmonger** – sells fresh fish.  
**chemist (UK) / drugstore (US)** – sells medicines and toiletries.  
**pharmacy (US)** – sells medicines.  
**newsagent** - sells newspapers and magazines.  
**stationer** – sells paper goods.  
**optician** – sells glasses / contact lenses.  
**hardware shop / hardware store / ironmonger** – hard goods, such as nails and screws.  
**corner shop (UK)** – a shop on the corner of your street, selling a range of basic goods – food, newspapers, sweets, bread, etc.  
**delicatessen (deli)** – sells specialist food not normally found in supermarkets. For example, an Italian deli, an Asian deli.  
**bookshop / bookstore** – books.  
**market** – market traders (people who work on a market) have stalls that sell fruit and vegetables, clothes, household items and so on.  
**petshop** –for pets and pet food.  
**flea market** – a group of stalls selling old furniture or clothes.  
**tea shop (UK)** – like a cafe, but sells tea and cakes.  
**petrol station (UK) / gas station (US)** – sells petrol, car products and sometimes food.

## DIALOGUES

### Buying Food Stuffs

*Mother:* Ann, will you, please, do the shopping today? I'm very busy.

*Ann:* Of course, I shall. What am I to buy?

*Mother:* I want to make a festive dinner tomorrow. Your aunt Liza and her husband promised to come and see us on Saturday.

*Ann:* What are you going to cook? Shall we have something special?

*Mother:* For the first course I want to make chicken broth. Buy a chicken, but mind, it mustn't be very fat.

*Ann:* Must I buy anything else at the butcher's?

*Mother:* If they have lean mutton, buy 2 kilos, I'll make mutton chops for the second course.

*Ann:* Is that all?

*Mother:* I'm afraid we've run out of potatoes and tomatoes. Drop in at the greengrocer's and get two kilos of potatoes and one of tomatoes.

*Ann:* I believe, that is all now?

*Mother:* Not yet. Will you look in at the cake shop and buy a chocolate cake? Aunt Liza is very fond of it. That seems to be all. Here is the money.

*Ann:* Give me a shopping bag and I'll start.

### **At the greengrocer's**

*Jane:* Good morning. Have you got any nice pears?

*Salesman:* We have some, but they are not very good, I'm afraid.

*Jane:* Let me see what you've got. Oh, yes, they are very hard, aren't they, Natasha?

*Natasha:* Yes, they are. Haven't you got any better ones?

*Salesman:* Sorry, we have no other pears. Try some of these apples instead. Look, aren't they nice?

*Jane:* Let's take two pounds of the apples, Natasha, and some strawberries. Have you got any?

*Salesman:* Oh, yes, we have some very good ones.

*Jane:* How much are they?

*Salesman:* They are 10 \$ a pound.

*Jane:* Well, one pound of these, please. Here's money.

*Salesman:* And here are your apples, and your strawberries and here's your change. Thank you.

*Natasha:* Just a moment, Jane. Have they any sweets in the shop? Let's get some chocolates to take home.

*Jane:* They haven't got any chocolates here. They've only got fruit and vegetables. Let's go to the confectioner's. They have all sorts of sweets.

*Natasha:* OK, let's go there.

### **At the Footwear Department**

*Salesgirl:* What can I do for you, madam?

*Customer:* I'd like a pair of strong walking shoes for everyday wear.

*Salesgirl:* What size do you take in shoes?

*Customer:* My size is 37.

*Salesgirl:* Will you try on these brown shoes?

*Customer:* Don't you think that the heels are a bit too high for everyday wear?

*Salesgirl:* Oh, no. Such heels are all the fashion now. But you can try on another pair. This is a pair of nice flat-heeled shoes. Do they pinch?

*Customer:* I like them much better than those ones. Will you give me a shoe for the left foot, please. It's a perfect fit. How much are they?

*Salesgirl:* 90 \$.

*Customer:* Will you wrap them up, please? Where is the cashdesk?

*Salesgirl:* It's at the end of the department. Thank you.

*Customer:* Thank you. Good-bye.

### **At the Ready-Made Clothes Department**

*Customer:* I'd like a summer frock.

*Salesgirl:* Certainly. What is your size?

*Customer:* 46. I'm stock size.

*Salesgirl:* The dresses on that rail are all size 46. Look them through and you may find something to your taste.

*Customer:* May I try on this cotton dress? Does it fit me?

*Salesgirl:* It fits you perfectly but I don't think the colour becomes you. It's too dark.

*Customer:* Have you got something a shade lighter?

*Salesgirl:* I'm afraid, we haven't. Would mind trying on this light-blue one?

*Customer:* But it's artificial silk. It's too hot for summer wear.

*Salesgirl:* Will you drop in in a couple of days? We are expecting most of our summer stock at the end of the week.

*Customer:* Yes, of course. Thank you. Good-bye.

*Salesgirl:* Good-bye.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Say at what shops we can buy the following:

- ham and sausage;
- sugar and coffee;
- beef and mutton;
- smoked and salted fish;
- potatoes, onions and carrots;
- grapes and pears;
- milk and sour cream;
- cakes and pies;
- candies and chocolates;
- tea;
- eggs;
- flour;
- sunflower oil;
- turkey and duck;
- beetroot and cabbage;
- oranges and apples;
- cheese and cream;
- green peas and tomatoes.

### 2. Say what one can buy:

- ✓ at the hosiery department,
- ✓ at the millinery department,
- ✓ at the leather goods department,
- ✓ at the footwear department,
- ✓ at the perfumery department,
- ✓ at the glass-ware department,
- ✓ at the knitted goods department,
- ✓ at the stationery department,
- ✓ at the furniture department,
- ✓ at the ready-made clothes department,
- ✓ at the haberdashery department.

### 3. Say what you buy when you make:

1. a cabbage soup;
2. a meat salad;



3. a cake;
4. a vegetable salad;
5. a mushroom soup.

**4. Match the parts of the sentences:**

1. When you want to buy something, ...	a) at the grocer's.
2. In the shop-window, you see ...	b) at the confectioner's.
3. Sugar, tea, coffee, salt, pepper, and so on are sold ...	c) at the baker's, meat at the butcher's.
4. You can buy bread ...	d) what is sold in the shop.
5. You go to the greengrocer's for ...	e) at the bookseller's.
6. Cakes and sweets are sold ...	f) you go to the men's and boy's or ladies' and girls' outfitter's.
7. If you want to buy clothes, ...	g) you must go to the shop where it is sold.
8. If you can not find clothes that are the right size, ...	h) vegetables and fruit.
9. We buy boots and shoes...	i) we go to the jeweller's.
10. To buy jewellery and silver and golden watches...	j) at the footwear shop.
11. Books are sold...	k) you can go to a tailor's shop.

**5. Read and translate the text about shopping in the United Kingdom:**

Marks & Spencer is Britain's favourite store. Tourists love it too. It attracts a great variety of customers from house wives to millionaires. Princess Diana, Dustin Hoffman and the British Prime-minister are just a few of its famous customers. Last year it made a profit of 529 million pounds.

It all started 105 years ago when a young Polish immigrant Michael Marks had a stall in Leeds market. He didn't have many things to sell: some cotton, a little wool, lots of buttons and a few shoelaces. Above his stall he put the now famous notice: "Don't ask how much - it's a penny." Ten years later he met Tom Spencer and together they started Penny stalls in many towns in the North of England. Today there are 564 branches of Marks & Spencer all over the world: in America, Canada, Spain, France, Belgium and Hungary.

The store bases its business on 3 principals: good value, good quality and good service. Also, it changes with the times; once it was all jumpers and knickers. Now it is food, furniture and flowers as well. Top fashion designers advice on styles of clothes. Perhaps, the most important key to its success is its happy well-trained staff. Conditions of work are excellent. There are company doctors, dentists, hairdressers, etc. And all the staff can have lunch for under 40 pence.

Surprisingly tastes in food and clothes are international. What sells well in Paris, sells just as well in Newcastle and Moscow. Their best selling clothes are:

for women - jumpers and knickers (M & S is famous for its knickers); for men - shirts, socks, pajamas, dressing gowns and suits; for children - underwear and socks. Best sellers in food include: fresh chickens, vegetables and sandwiches, "Chicken Kiev" is internationally the most popular convince food.

Shopping in Britain is also famous for its Freshfood. Freshfood is a chain of food stores and very successful supermarkets which has grown tremendously in the twenty years since it was founded, and now it has branches in the High Streets of all the towns of any size in Britain. In the beginning the stores sold only foodstuffs, but in recent years they have diversified enormously and now sell clothes, books, records, electrical and domestic equipment. The success of the chain has been due to an enterprising management and to attractive layout and display in the stores. It has been discovered that impulse buying accounts for almost 35 per cent of the total turn over of the stores. The stores are organized completely for self-service and customers are encouraged to wander around the spaciouly laid out stands. Special free gifts and reduced prices are used to tempt customers into the stores and they can't stand the temptation.

**6. Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage:**

<i>aisles</i>	<i>groceries</i>	<i>shopping cart</i>
<i>check-out counter</i>	<i>on sale</i>	<i>supermarket</i>
<i>express lane</i>		

Karin and Leslie need to buy food, so they go to the \_\_\_\_\_. The name of their supermarket is Safeway. Before they go into the store, Karin gets a \_\_\_\_\_. They walk up and down the \_\_\_\_\_. They're hungry, so they choose a lot of different food: soba noodles, pasta, chocolate, nuts, crackers, tomatoes. Karin also buys some cat food for Kitty. Luckily, cat food is \_\_\_\_\_, so it's cheaper than usual. Finally, Karin and Leslie get in line at the \_\_\_\_\_. (They are buying a lot of things, so they can't use the \_\_\_\_\_.) After the cashier gives them their change, they take their \_\_\_\_\_ to the car and go home. Now it's time to eat!

**7. Put each of the following words or phrases in the correct gap:**

*tag, label, cashier, bargain, receipt, exchange, take back, try on, fit, advice, shop assistant, credit card, check, select, cash, refund, size, sale*

If you want to go shopping there are a number of things you have to consider. If you would like to find a \_\_\_\_\_ you should make sure to go to a \_\_\_\_\_. The only problem with a sale is that it is sometimes hard to \_\_\_\_\_ something once you buy it. Many stores also refuse to give a \_\_\_\_\_ on anything you have bought. If you are looking for clothes, make sure to \_\_\_\_\_, check the \_\_\_\_\_ to make sure that it is a good \_\_\_\_\_. Another good idea is to look at the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to see instructions for washing, etc. It's always a good idea to also ask the \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_. Finally, when you go to the \_\_\_\_\_ you can usually pay by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ if you don't have the \_\_\_\_\_. Never forget to get the \_\_\_\_\_!

### 8. Complete the dialogue (typical dialogue with a female customer):

Shop assistant: Hello, can I \_\_\_\_\_ you?

Customer: I \_\_\_\_\_ for a pair of jeans.

Shop assistant: What \_\_\_\_\_ do you take?

Customer: Twenty-nine.

Shop assistant: We have some very nice blue jeans here. They're \_\_\_\_\_ this week.

Customer: Well, I actually \_\_\_\_\_ black jeans.

Shop assistant: That's okay. We \_\_\_\_\_ have them in black.

Customer: Where can I \_\_\_\_\_ them on?

Shop assistant: The \_\_\_\_\_ room is over there.

*(The customer tries the jeans on.)*

Customer: They're \_\_\_\_\_ big.

Shop assistant: Would you like a \_\_\_\_\_ size?

Customer: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

*(The customer tries the jeans on.)*

Customer: These \_\_\_\_\_ rather well. But I think I look \_\_\_\_\_ in them. Don't you think?

Shop assistant: Not at all. These jeans \_\_\_\_\_ you very well.

Customer: Well, I think I \_\_\_\_\_ a blue pair.

*(The shop assistant brings a pair of blue jeans and the customer tries the jeans on.)*

Customer: They are very \_\_\_\_\_ and I don't like blue jeans, anyway. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me another pair in black?

Shop assistant: No, not at all. ...

### 9. Translate the dialogues into English:

- Бери візок. Давай підемо до м'ясного прилавка. Нам треба купити курча.
  - М'ясний прилавок у третьому ряду. А що ще ми повинні купити?
  - Мама наказала купити олії і яєць.
  - Яйця продаються у п'ятому ряду, а олія – у шостому.
  - Давай купимо розчинної кави.
  - Я краще люблю натуральну каву.
  - Гаразд. Наш візок уже повний продуктів. Пішли до каси. Ти ставай у чергу, а я піду візьму молока.
  - Не бери молока, у нас є молоко вдома.
  - Гаразд. Пішли до каси.
- \* \* \*
- Ти любиш робити покупки в універмазі?
  - Ні, не люблю. Там завжди багато людей. А ти любиш?

- А я люблю. Ти можеш купити там все, що тобі потрібно. До речі, давай сходимо в універмаг сьогодні. Я хочу купити там подарунок для своєї мами. У неї день народження через два дні.
- А що ти хочеш купити для неї?
- Я маю намір купити флакон парфумів.
- А ти знаєш її смак?
- Звичайно.
- Ти впевнена, що їй сподобаються ці парфуми?
- Звичайно.
- Тоді пішли.

\* \* \*

- О, рада тебе зустріти. Ти не зробила б мені послугу?
- Яку?
- Допоможи мені вибрати подарунок для брата.
- Вибирати подарунок для чоловіків дуже важко.
- Ти права, але я мушу купити щось, у нього завтра день народження.
- Давай підемо у відділ канцтоварів. Можливо у них є гарні авторучки.
- Чудова ідея. Тим більше, що його авторучка вийшла з ладу, наскільки мені відомо. Пішли.
- Послухай, а чому б не купити йому щось із галантереї, скажімо, парасольку?
- Ні, він має парасольку. Пішли у відділ канцтоварів.
- Гаразд.

### III. GRAMMAR

#### 1) The Past Perfect Tense

**The Past Perfect Tense** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Past Indefinite Tense (*had*) and Participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I	<b>Had</b> I	I
We	We	We
You	They	You
They } <b>had</b> } read	You } read	They} <b>had not (hadn't)</b> read
He	He	He
She	She	She
It	It	It

**The Past Perfect Tense** is used to express an action completed before a definite moment in the past. The moment in the past may be noted:

- (a) by adverbial expressions such as: *by 7 o'clock, by that time, by the end of the term, by winter, etc.*  
e.g. By the end of the year he had learned to speak English.
- (b) by an adverbial clause of time introduced by *when*.  
e.g. When I got to the station the train had already left.
- (c) The moment can be understood from the situation.  
e.g. – Why did he buy a new watch yesterday? – But he has lost his old one.

**Exercises:**

**I. Complete the sentences in Past Perfect Tense:**

1. They spent their honeymoon in Paris where they \_\_\_\_ (meet) two years before.
2. When Alice \_\_\_\_ (do) the shopping, she picked her children up from school.
3. He showed us the place where he \_\_\_\_\_ (hurt) his leg.
4. I looked at the photos that he \_\_\_\_\_ (send) .
5. Yesterday I read an interesting article which my teacher \_\_\_\_ (recommend) to me.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / touch) a snake before that day.
7. Andy won the match although he \_\_\_\_ (not / play) squash before.
8. When I left the house, I \_\_\_\_ (not / have) breakfast yet.
9. Jim crashed into another car because he \_\_\_\_ (not / realise) the red traffic light.
10. I worked on Saturday, so I \_\_\_\_ (not / go) to the party the day before.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ (what / you / say) before you opened the window?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ (he / speak) to you before he called us?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ (you / switch) off the cooker before we left?
14. \_\_\_\_ (you / take) the laundry in when it started to rain?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ (who / live) in that house before the Smiths bought it?

**II. Use the *Past Indefinite* or the *Past Perfect* instead of the infinitives in brackets:**

1. He sighed again and again, like one who \_\_\_\_\_ (to escape) from danger.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) tea and \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) the biscuits which Mrs. Aberdeen \_\_\_\_\_ (to bring) him.
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) all so sudden that for a moment no one \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) what \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen).
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) me that they \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) at the same public school and \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) friends ever since.
5. Near the door he \_\_\_\_\_ (to see) the man he \_\_\_\_\_ (to notice) at the station.
6. The new bus-driver \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) an accident after he \_\_\_\_\_ (to drive) a few yards.
7. The students \_\_\_\_\_ (to enter) the classroom five minutes after the bell \_\_\_\_\_ (to ring).
8. After she \_\_\_\_\_ (to lock) all the doors, \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to bed.

9. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to feel) sick after she \_\_\_\_\_ (to eat) a whole box of chocolates.
10. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (to rise) when the farmer \_\_\_\_\_ (to start) work.

### III. Choose the *Past Perfect*, or the *Past Indefinite Tense*:

1. We had already eaten when John \_\_\_\_\_ (come) home.
2. Last year Juan \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) all his exams.
3. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the airport I discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I \_\_\_\_\_ (forgot) my credit card.
6. When we \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the station, the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone \_\_\_\_\_ (break) into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the kitchen.

### IV. Use the *Past Indefinite*, the *Past Continuous* or the *Past Perfect* instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. Yes, Jane? What you \_\_\_\_\_ (to say)?
2. He even \_\_\_\_\_ (not to count) the money that Lammiter \_\_\_\_\_ (to hold) out to him.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) at her. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to smile) to herself and \_\_\_\_\_ (not to answer) my questions at once. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to repeat) it.
4. For some time she \_\_\_\_\_ (not to realize) where she \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) and what \_\_\_\_\_ (to happen).
5. The silence in the room \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) that the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (to stop).
6. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ (to make) sandwiches in the kitchen and \_\_\_\_\_ (not to hear) the bell.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to go) to school for the first time with a bunch of flowers in his hand, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (to seem) to him that everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (to turn) to look at him.
8. The grass \_\_\_\_\_ (to be) damp; it \_\_\_\_\_ (to tell) us that the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (to fall) in the night.
9. Now she \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) at me with wide open eyes.
10. After the war they \_\_\_\_\_ (to part) and he (to tell) me that he \_\_\_\_\_ (not to see) her since.

## 2) The Future Perfect Tense

The **Future Perfect Tense** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Future Indefinite Tense (*will have*) and Participle II of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I We You They } <b>will have</b> } read He She It	<b>Will</b> I We They You } <b>have</b> read He She It	I We You They } <b>will not (won't) have</b> He read She It

**The Future Perfect Tense** is used to express an action completed before a definite moment in the future. The moment in the future may be noted:

- (d) by an adverbial expression with the preposition *by*: *by 7 o'clock, by this time, by the end of the term, by winter, etc.*  
e.g. By this time next week we will have left for the country.
- (e) by an adverbial clause of time and condition.  
e.g. When he arrives we will have already left for the country.
- (f) The moment can be understood from the situation.  
e.g. We will get there only at 8. They will have completed their work.

**Exercises:**

**I. Fill in the verbs in brackets in the Future Perfect Tense:**

1. Anne \_\_\_\_\_ her bike next week. (to repair)
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ the washing by 8 o'clock. (to do)
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ Paris by the end of next year. (to visit)
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ this by 6 o'clock. (to finish)
5. Sam \_\_\_\_\_ by next week. (to leave)
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ this with her mother tonight. (to discuss)
7. The police \_\_\_\_\_ the driver. (to arrest)
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ their essay by tomorrow. (to write)
9. Paolo \_\_\_\_\_ the teams. (to manage)
10. If we can do that - then we \_\_\_\_\_ our mission. (to fulfill)

**II. Choose the correct variant:**

1. Tino won't be in Italy next month. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
  - a) will have come back
  - b) will have came back
  - c) will have coming back
2. The Browns won't be living in the same house a year from now. They \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
  - a) will have leave
  - b) will have left
  - c) will have leaved
3. Gloria won't be working at six o'clock. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

- a) will have went home
  - b) will have gone home
  - c) will have go home
4. Sam won't be sweeping the garage tomorrow. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have swept it
  - b) will have sweeped it
  - c) will have sweeping
5. Jack won't be driving the same car a year from now. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have solden it
  - b) will have sold it
  - c) will have sell it
6. Nancy won't be sleeping at eight o'clock in the morning. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have get up
  - b) will have gets up
  - c) will have got up
7. Barbara won't be living in an apartment next year. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have bought a house
  - b) will have buyed a house
  - c) will have buys a house
8. Anne won't be single next year. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have found a boyfriend
  - b) will have find a boyfriend
  - c) will have finds a boyfriend
9. Anne won't be working at the bank in six months. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have became a famous actress
  - b) will have become a famous actress
  - c) will have becume a famous actress
10. Johnnie won't be working at the bookstore in a few years. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.
- a) will have got rich
  - b) will have gets rich
  - c) will have get rich

#### ***IV. WRITING***

**Write an essay on one of the following topics:**

**1. My Last Going Shopping.**

**2. Choosing a Birthday Present.**



## MODULE 2

### UNIT 3

#### SEASONS AND WEATHER

##### *II. TEXT*

###### **Weather Forecast**

I remember a holiday of mine being completely ruined one late autumn by our paying attention to the weather report of the local newspaper. "Heavy **showers**, with **thunderstorms**, may be expected today," it would say on Monday, and so we would **give up** our picnic, and stop **indoors** all day, waiting for the rain. And people would pass the house, going off in wagonettes and coaches as jolly and merry as could be, the sun shining out, and not a cloud to be seen.

"Ah!" we said, as we stood looking out at them through the window, "won't they come home **soaked!**"

And we chuckled to think how **wet** they were going to get, and came back and **stirred** the fire, and got our books. By twelve o'clock, with the sun **pouring** into the room, the **heat** became quite **oppressive**, and we wondered when those heavy showers and occasional thunderstorms were going to begin.

At one o'clock, the landlady would come in to ask if we weren't going out, as it seemed such a lovely day.

"No, no," we replied, with a knowing **chuckle**, "not we. WE don't mean to get wet - no, no."

And when the afternoon was nearly gone, and still there was no sign of rain, we tried to **cheer ourselves up** with the idea that it would come down all at once, just as the people had started for home, and were out of the reach of any **shelter**, and that they would thus get more **drenched** than ever. But not a drop ever fell, and it finished a grand day, and a lovely night after it.

The next morning we would read that it was going to be a "warm, fine to **set-fair** day; much heat;" and we would dress ourselves in **flimsy** things, and go out, and, half-an-hour after we had started, it would **commence** to rain hard, and a bitterly cold wind would spring up, and both would keep on steadily for the whole day, and we would come home with colds and rheumatism all over us, and go to bed.

The weather is a thing that is beyond me altogether. I never can understand it. The barometer is useless: it is as misleading as the newspaper forecast.

There was one hanging up in a hotel at Oxford at which I was staying last spring, and, when I got there, it was pointing to "set fair." It was simply pouring with rain outside, and had been all day; and I couldn't quite **make matters out**. I **tapped** the **barometer**, and it jumped up and pointed to "very dry." The **Boots**

stopped as he was passing, and said he expected it meant to-morrow. I fancied that maybe it was thinking of the week before last, but Boots said, No, he thought not.

I tapped it again the next morning, and it went up still higher, and the rain came down faster than ever. On Wednesday I went and hit it again, and the pointer went round towards "set fair," "very dry," and "much heat," until it was stopped by the **peg**. It evidently wanted to go on, but the peg prevented it, and it had to be content with pointing to the mere commonplace "very dry."

The fine weather never came that summer.

(from "Three Men in a Boat" by Jerome K. Jerome)

### Vocabulary Notes

**shower** – *n* a short period of rain (злива)

E.g. A heavy shower

**thunderstorm** – *n* [count.] a storm with thunder and lightning (гроза)

**to give up** – *phrasal verb* to stop doing something, especially something that you do regularly (кидати, позбутися)

E.g. Why don't you give up smoking?

**indoors** – *adv* inside a building [ $\neq$  outdoors] (в приміщенні)

E.g. It's raining - let's go indoors. • He stayed indoors all morning.

**soaked** – *adj* very wet (дуже мокрий)

E.g. I'm soaked through (=completely wet).

**wet** – *adj* covered in water or another liquid [ $\neq$  dry] (мокий)

E.g. wet clothes • I didn't want to get my hair wet.

**to stir** – *v* [intrans., trans.] to move slightly, or to make someone or something do this (поворушити)

E.g. A gentle breeze stirred the curtains. • He hadn't stirred from his chair all morning.

**to pour** – *v* 1. [trans.] to make a liquid flow out of a container (лити)

*pour something into/over etc something*

E.g. Pour the milk into a jug. pour somebody something • He poured himself a drink.

2. [intrans.] to flow or come out quickly and in large amounts (литися, наповняти)

*pour out of/from etc*

E.g. Tears poured down her cheeks. • Smoke was pouring from the engine.

**heat** – *n* [uncount.] very hot weather (спека)

E.g. the summer heat

**oppressive** – *adj* making you feel uncomfortable (гнітючий)

E.g. oppressive heat

**to chuckle** – *v* [trans.] to laugh quietly (тихо сміятися)

E.g. What are you chuckling about?

**to cheer up** – *phrasal verb* to become happier, or to make someone feel happier (підбадьорити)

E.g. Cheer up! The worst is over.

**shelter** – *n* [uncount.] protection from danger or from the weather  
(схованка)

*in/under the shelter of something*

E.g. He was standing in the shelter of a doorway. • They took shelter under a tree.

**drenched** – *adj* completely wet (сильно мокрий)

E.g. I was drenched in sweat.

**set-fair** – ясна погода (напис на барометрі)

**flimsy** – *adj* 1. thin and light, and not thick or strong (тонкий, легкий)

E.g. a flimsy cotton dress • a flimsy table

2. a flimsy argument or excuse is not good enough for you to believe  
(незначний)

E.g. The evidence against him is very flimsy.

**to commence** – *v* [intrans., trans.] *formal* to begin (починати)

E.g. Work on the building will commence soon.

**to make matters out** – to understand (розуміти)

E.g. I could not make out what she said.

**to tap** – *v* [intrans., trans.] to gently hit something, often making a slight noise (легенько стукати)

*tap (somebody/something) on something*

E.g. I tapped him on the shoulder. • Carol tapped her foot in time to the music.

**barometer** – *n* 1. [count.] something that shows any changes in a situation  
(барометр)

E.g. an industry that's a good barometer of the state of the economy

2. an instrument for measuring changes in air pressure and weather

**Boots** – hotel-servant cleaning shoes and boots (людина в готелі, яка чистить взуття)

**peg** – *n* [count.] a short object that is fastened to a wall, used for hanging things on (вішак, гвіздок)

E.g. a coat peg.

## EXERCISES

### I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:

1. сильні зливи з грозами;
2. ми намагалися підбадьорити себе;
3. сонце лилося в кімнату;
4. здавався такий чудовий день;
5. жодної краплі не впало;
6. ми повернулися додому із застудою і ревматизмом;
7. на вулиці просто лило як з відра;

8. я простукав барометр;
9. погода – це річ, яку я не можу збагнути;
10. гарної погоди і не було того літа.

**II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:**

*drop, ruined, jolly, oppressive, give up, soaked, thunderstorms, pass, heavy, cloud.*

1. a holiday of mine being completely \_\_\_\_\_;
2. we would \_\_\_\_\_ our picnic;
3. people would \_\_\_\_\_ the house;
4. as \_\_\_\_\_ and merry as could be;
5. not a \_\_\_\_\_ to be seen;
6. they come home \_\_\_\_\_;
7. the heat became quite \_\_\_\_\_;
8. \_\_\_\_\_ showers;
9. occasional \_\_\_\_\_;
10. not a \_\_\_\_\_ ever fell.

**III. Fill in the correct prepositions:**

1. we stood looking \_\_\_\_\_ at them \_\_\_\_\_ the window;
2. \_\_\_\_\_ one o'clock, the landlady would come \_\_\_\_\_;
3. we tried to cheer ourselves \_\_\_\_\_;
4. it finished a grand day, and a lovely night \_\_\_\_\_ it;
5. we would dress ourselves \_\_\_\_\_ flimsy things, and go \_\_\_\_\_;
6. there was one hanging \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel at Oxford at which I was staying;
7. it was simply pouring \_\_\_\_\_ rain outside;
8. I couldn't quite make matters \_\_\_\_\_;
9. were \_\_\_\_\_ of the reach \_\_\_\_\_ any shelter;
10. it evidently wanted to go \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. Match the word with its explanation:**

1. heat	a) a storm with thunder and lightning
2. thunderstorm	b) a short period of rain
3. shower	c) inside a building
4. barometer	d) very hot weather
5. indoors	e) an instrument for measuring changes in air pressure and weather
6. to tap	f) protection from danger or from the weather
7. shelter	g) to move slightly, or to make someone or something do this
8. to stir	h) to gently hit something, often making a slight noise

V. Study the text, put 10 questions to it and ask your group-mates to answer them.

VI. Retell the text.

### III. TOPIC

#### Seasons



There are four seasons in the year: winter, spring, summer and autumn. Each of them lasts three months. In Ukraine winter is usually a **cold** season. It often **snows**, the rivers are **frozen**. The most unpleasant thing about winter is that **the sun sets early and rises late** – especially in December and January. The days are short, the sky is often grey, nature is sleeping and sometimes it gets rather boring. But at the end of March **the weather gets gradually milder**. The sun shines more brightly. The days become longer. **The snow begins melting**. Spring comes and **nature awakens after a long winter sleep**. All kinds of plants and flowers come out.

The birds return from the South and **build their nests**. The farmers begin the **sowing campaign**. Everything around is full of life and joy. Spring is followed by summer. The weather gets still warmer and sometimes it is very hot. The sky is blue and **cloudless**. But sometimes there are **storms** with **thunder** and **lightning**. The gardens are full with flowers for all summer months.

In summer people spend much time **in the open air**. They find time to go to the forest, to swim in the river, to sunbathe. Autumn comes in September. Early autumn is still the **harvest time**, the time when the fruit and vegetables become **ripe**. It is also a very beautiful time of the year, when the weather is still warm and the leaves change their colour from green to yellow. But towards the end of October the weather gets colder and colder. There's much rain and **fog**. Leaves fall from trees and cover the ground. Birds fly away to warm countries. Low and **heavy clouds hang in the sky**. The landscape becomes rather dull. Nature slowly

falls asleep for winter. In fact every season has its fine days and is pleasant in its own way. And it is not difficult to see this beauty.

### **Weather**

The naughtiest thing in the world is the weather. It's like a **capricious woman** who always does the opposite to what you ask her.

When you want to go for a picnic in the open air you ask the skies to remain clear and the day to be fine. Nervously you switch on the radio and listen to the **weather forecast**. You tremble with joy to hear that it'll stay warm and dry with bright sunshine and **moderate breeze**. Your imagination draws a hot summer afternoon and yourself saying: "**Nice weather we are having today!**" You take a lot of food and no warm clothes, go to the countryside but ... do not get anything sunny. You get it cloudy and cool with **drizzle** which ends with a thundery shower. The sky is so **heavily cast with clouds**, the **downpours** follow one another with such frequency, the **rumbling of thunder** and **flashes of lightning** are so frightening that you've got no illusions left. You throw away the food and go back hungry and angry. And when you are already approaching your home **soaked to the skin** it suddenly brightens up. Oh, Goodness!

Each summer every student survives through the best of his or her life - an examination session. Then many students plead: "Please, weather, stay cloudy, chilly and even cold with brisk northerly wind and **rain torrents** leaving pools and **puddles** everywhere, especially on the playground. And I'll be a good student." The radio promises: "**Patchy light drizzle** with showery outbreaks of rain." But the "patch" is never in the right place. Instead the skies send heat and excellent weather for a **sun tan**. Everyone knows that sun tan never helps at exams.

And it is always like this. When you go skiing and want to have frosty weather with a lot of snow, it starts **thawing** and your skis sink in the **slush**. Instead of a **snowfall** and **hoarfrost** on the trees you get excellent **sleet**. The weather does not feel any **pangs of remorse**. When you go in the car to the country, enjoying nice weather and a beautiful view of a **rainbow** in the blue sky, you pay no attention to some **haze** on the horizon. Some time later a thin **mist** in the distance turns into a thick fog and you spend a lovely two hours instead of one at the steering wheel.

When you plant some much-cared-for flowers in the garden, either a **ground frost** or a **hail** storm kills them. Digging muddy flowerbeds one feels exasperated: "What beastly weather we've had this week! And it keeps nasty!"

To tell the truth, sometimes the weather is ashamed and turns for the better. But not always. More often it sticks to its own pattern and after a short warm spell turns bad again. Why is it always like this? Maybe, because the weather likes surprises and wants to bring in adventures to our life, breaking the boring routine with marvellous happenings?

In England, where the weather seems to change every minute, you might

imagine that people's moods would reflect these changes. But the English are regarded as an undemonstrative and rather placid race.

For myself, I know I am affected by the weather. There is a big difference in my energy levels during the different seasons. In winter I have nothing like as much enthusiasm for doing things as I have in the summer. Even on sunny days I find it difficult to make myself do anything more than I have to. While not getting particularly depressed during winter, I do feel rather like a hibernating animal. The one exception to this is when I go to the mountains - in spite of the freezing temperatures, I feel exhilarated by the fresh, clear air and once more ready for anything. Unlike most people, I love the **wind**. I have never experienced a **tornado** or a real **hurricane**, just a **strong gale**, and I find it thrilling. The wind gives me both physical and mental energy. It sweeps away all my stale thoughts and gives me the feeling of being able to start again. It makes me feel much more creative, but at the same time slightly mad.

In contrast to this happy feeling produced by the wind, my lowest time is on days of grey skies and constant rain. Then, it doesn't take much to make me short-tempered with people; also, the ability to make sensible decisions seems to go out of the window at this time.



My wet weather mood contrasts greatly with my sunny day behaviour. I notice two changes in me - one which is more dramatic than the other. If we have a period of dull weather followed by a bright sunny day, I feel cheerful, happy and full of joy, as if a burden has been lifted from me. If this one sunny day is followed by more and more sunny days, my mood settles down into one of contentment, openness and a feeling of physical well-being. My face relaxes, as does my body, and I feel able to cope with everybody and everything.

There is no doubt that the weather plays an important part in my behaviour. Sometimes, however, it is difficult to distinguish between a weather-related mood and just a bad temper. It's very easy to blame the weather!

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

• Seasons	• Weather
<p><b>cold</b> – холодний, <b>cool</b> – прохолодний, <b>warm</b> – теплий, <b>hot</b> – спекотний</p> <p><b>snow</b> – сніг, <b>rain</b> – дощ,</p> <p><b>the rivers are frozen</b> – річки замерзлі,</p> <p><b>the sun sets early and rises late</b> – сонце сідає рано, а встає пізно,</p> <p><b>the weather gets gradually milder</b> – погода поступово стає приємнішою,</p> <p><b>the snow begins melting</b> – сніг починає танути,</p> <p><b>nature awakens after a long winter sleep</b> – природа пробуджується після довгого зимового сну,</p> <p><b>birds build their nests</b> – птахи будують свої гнізда,</p> <p><b>sowing campaign</b> – посівна кампанія</p> <p><b>cloudless</b> – безхмарний,</p> <p><b>storms</b> – грози, <b>thunder</b> – грім,</p> <p><b>lightning</b> – блискавка,</p> <p><b>in the open air</b> – на відкритому повітрі, <b>harvest time</b> – час врожаю,</p> <p><b>ripe</b> – стиглий, <b>fog</b> – туман,</p> <p><b>heavy clouds hang in the sky</b> – важкі хмари на небі</p>	<p><b>capricious woman</b> – капризна жінка,</p> <p><b>weather forecast</b> – прогноз погоди,</p> <p><b>moderate breeze</b> – легкий бриз,</p> <p><b>“Nice weather we are having today!”</b> – Сьогодні буде гарний день!</p> <p><b>drizzle</b> – мряка,</p> <p><b>heavily cast with clouds</b> – густо вкритий хмарами, <b>downpour</b> – злива,</p> <p><b>rumbling of thunder</b> – гуркіт грому,</p> <p><b>flashes of lightning</b> – спалах блискавки, <b>soaked to the skin</b> – промоклий до нитки ,</p> <p><b>rain torrents</b> – потоки дощу,</p> <p><b>puddles</b> – калюжі,</p> <p><b>patchy light drizzle</b> – місцями легка мряка, <b>sun tan</b> – сонячна засмага,</p> <p><b>to thaw</b> – танути, <b>slush</b></p> <p><b>snowfall</b> – снігопад, <b>hoarfrost</b> – іній,</p> <p><b>sleet</b> – сльота, <b>pangs of remorse</b> – докори сумління, <b>haze / mist</b> – туман,</p> <p><b>ground frost</b> – заморозки,</p> <p><b>hail</b> – град, <b>wind</b> – вітер,</p> <p><b>tornado</b> – торнадо,</p> <p><b>hurricane</b> – ураган,</p> <p><b>strong gale</b> – сильний вітер</p>

### Some useful expressions:

What's the weather like?

It's sunny/fine/lovely/glorious.

It's rainy/wet/cloudy/windy/foggy.

It's cool/chilly.

It's warm.

It's (boiling) hot.

It's (freezing) cold.

It's snowing.

It's raining.

It's pouring (down) British English/It's pouring (rain) American English (=raining a lot).

It's drizzling (=raining a little).



## DIALOGUES

- 1) - Hello, Charles.  
- Hello, Dick, lovely day, isn't it?  
- Absolutely wonderful, nice and warm. What's the weather forecast for tomorrow? Do you know?  
- Yes, it says it will be bright and sunny.  
- How nice. Nice weather for outing.  
- You are right.
- 2) - It's a beautiful morning, isn't it?  
- Oh, yes, most lovely. There isn't a cloud in the sky and the sun is shining brightly. I'm afraid it may be very hot in the afternoon.  
- It's 20° C now. I've just heard on the radio the temperature may rise to 29° C in the afternoon.  
- It wouldn't be very nice. I can't stand such heat. I'm simply melting.  
- Well, as for me, I like hot weather better than cold.  
- I can't stand cold weather either.
- 3) - Good morning, Mrs Williams. How are you this morning?  
- I'm quite all right, thank you, Mr Jones. And how are you?  
- Fine, too, thank you. Nice day, isn't it?  
- Absolutely lovely. Much warmer than yesterday, I believe, though a bit misty. Have you heard the weather forecast for today by the way?  
- Yes, I have. It says the early morning mist is to clear before noon and the rest of the day will be bright and sunny with the temperature between 15° C and 17° C.  
- Good, what's the outlook for tomorrow?  
- It says there will be little change, so I believe we may have a few fine days after all.  
- Splendid. A fine weekend is just what we all need, don't we?  
- Oh, yes, quite true. Good-bye, Mrs Williams.  
- Good - bye, Mr Jones.
- 4) **A:** What's the weather today?  
**B:** The temperature has fallen again.  
**A:** I enjoy the cold weather.  
**B:** Don't you mind the cold?  
**A:** Not at all. I prefer a cold winter to a hot, muggy summer.  
**B:** I agree. After the terrible August we had last year, low temperatures are kind of refreshing.  
**A:** In August there wasn't a breeze anywhere. There was ninety percent humidity, and the temperature stayed above ninety degrees for 15 straight days.

**B:** It's six o'clock now. I'll turn on the radio. Let's listen to the weather report.

**Radio:** As the cold front crosses the region tonight, temperatures will drop considerably. The present temperature is 26 degrees. Tonight will be partly cloudy. Tomorrow will become sunny, windy, and very cold. High 20, low 16. Strong winds from the north will bring Arctic air to the region. Snow will develop at the end of the week.

**A:** Did you listen to the weather forecast?

**B:** Yes, I did. The mild weather will continue. Scattered showers will occur tomorrow night.

**A:** And what about the day after tomorrow?

**B:** Skies will begin to clear. Drier, colder air will arrive from the north-west. Sunny but cold weather will prevail the day after tomorrow.

**A:** At this time of the year, the weather is so changeable.

### **5) Weather Talk**

*Leon:* Lovely day, isn't it?

*George:* It is. There's hardly a cloud in the sky in fact.

*Leon:* We'll have a heat wave, I fear. It must be 25 degrees in shade.

*George:* It is very close today. Not a leaf is stirring.

*Leon:* There's hardly a breath of air.

*George:* By the way, I've just read the weather forecast in my newspaper here.

*Leon:* What does it say?

*George:* (*reading*) "Pressure will remain high to the south -west of the British Isles. There will be occasional rain or drizzle, but bright weather with a few scattered showers will spread to England and Wales."

*Leon:* I fear a thunderstorm is coming.

*George:* The sky is overcast and the rain is going in.

*Leon:* It looks like rain. Actually it's beginning to rain. And I have left my umbrella at home. It never rains but it pours!

*George:* Fortunately enough, I've got my folding umbrella with me. Let me put it up.

*Leon:* What a tremendous clap of thunder!

*George:* And what a flash of lightning!

*Leon:* But the English have a saying about the weather: If you don't like it now, just wait a bit.

*George:* Look! It's clearing up. The clouds are lifting.

*Leon:* It has stopped raining. Look at this wonderful rainbow!

*George:* Bright sunshine again. Now I know why English weather is something worth talking about.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you agree that the weather is like a capricious woman? Prove your point of view.
2. How many seasons are there in a year?
3. What weather do you like best of all and why?
4. When does nature awaken from her long winter sleep?
5. Why do we like spring so much?
6. Why do people try to spend more time in the open air in summer?
7. Is summer the best season for tourism?
8. Do you listen to the weather forecasts? Do you trust them? Have you heard the weather forecast today? Was it right?
9. Say what mood in you prevails when:
  - a) it is a cold winter day;
  - b) it is a hot summer night;
  - c) it is a warm spring evening;
  - d) it is a cool autumn morning.
10. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each season?

### 2. Match the nouns with adjectives to make common phrases:

<i>Nouns:</i>	rain	<i>Adjectives:</i>	heavy	bitter
	wind		biting	chilly
	fog		strong	cloudy
	snow		fresh	brisk
	sky		thick	drizzling
	air		thin	hot
			bright	southerly
			clear	swirling
			chilly	misty

### 3. Listen to me and correct. If the sentence is not true, make it true.

*Ex.: We always/ usually/ sometimes/ never have ... in... .*

1. We always have snow in June.
2. We sometimes have rain in July and August.
3. We sometimes have warm weather in December.
4. It is warm in March.
5. It is always frosty in January.
6. We never have windy weather in February.
7. It is cold in June.

**4. Find the word with the strongest meaning in each of these groups of words:**

1. unpleasant - bad - beastly - wretched - nasty;
2. breeze - squall - gust - storm - hurricane;
3. cold - chilly - cool - frosty - freezing;
4. downpour - rain - shower - drizzle;
5. stuffy - warm - close - sultry - hot;
6. waterfall - flood - stream - whirlpool;
7. splendid - glorious - fine - pleasant - nice;
8. haze - dimness - fog - mist - smog.

**5. What kind of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go before each of these.**

1. We had to sit in the shade every afternoon.
2. The sweat was pouring out of us.
3. I can hardly breathe; I wish it would rain to cool us down.
4. Even the postman had to use the boat to get around.
5. They had to close the airport; the snow was a meter deep.
6. We were able to sit in the garden in the middle of winter.
7. The earth became rock-hard and a lot of plants died.
8. It blew the newspaper clean out of my hands.
9. A row of big trees had been uprooted like matchsticks.
10. I could hardly see my hand in front of my face.

**6. What types of weather are bad or good for doing these things?**

Example: skiing

bad: mild weather which makes the snow melt;

good: cold, clear days.

1. Planting flowers in a garden.
2. Having an evening barbecue.
3. Going out in a small sailing boat.
4. A day of sightseeing in a big city.
5. Camping out in a tent.
6. Looking at ships through binoculars.

**7. Match the word with its explanation:**

1. cool	a) raining slightly
2. drizzling	b) ice crystals on a frozen surface
3. flood	c) small pieces of ice that fall during a storm
4. forecast	d) electric flash caused by two clouds hitting
5. frost	e) the expected weather for the future
6. hail	f) a band of colours found in the sky after a rainfall
7. lightning	g) temperature in between warm and cold

8. rainbow	h) overflow of rain water
9. raining cats and dogs	i) snow on the ground that has been rained on
10. slush	j) raining heavily

**8. Translate into Ukrainian paying attention to the underlined words:**

1. The skiers were warned about a possible *avalanche*.
2. It's supposed to go below *freezing* before the weekend.
3. The airplane couldn't take-off because of the *blizzard*.
4. It was *boiling hot*, so we all jumped into the lake.
5. Don't bother with a hat. There is always a *breeze* near the ocean.
6. In the summer, the average temperature here is 20 degrees *Celsius*.
7. It's a bit *chilly* today, so I think you should wear a coat.
8. It may look *cloudy* in the morning, but the sun always comes out by afternoon.
9. They're calling for a *cold spell*, so we put off our camping trip.
10. The days were boiling hot, but the nights were *cool* and comfortable for sleeping.
11. Forest fires are a serious danger during a *drought*.
12. We couldn't see the bridge because there was too much *fog*.
13. According to the 5 day *forecast*, it's going to rain on our wedding day.
14. Some flowers are so strong they can withstand *frost*.
15. There was so much *hail* that some of the trailer homes were destroyed.

**9. Choose the correct alternative to fill each gap in the following sentences:**

1. It's absolutely ... outside, so wear your gloves.  
A. cold                      B. chilly                      C. freezing
2. We had to postpone the match because it started to really ... .  
A. drizzle                      B. pour                      C. shower
3. Tomorrow will be mild with the possibility of a few ... in the evening.  
A. rain                      B. showers                      C. sleet
4. It's only a bit of light ... . You won't need an umbrella.  
A. sleet                      B. drizzle                      C. hail
5. Close to the Equator the weather is hot and ... and there are often electrical storms.  
A. damp                      B. mild                      C. humid
6. The old house was very cold and ... in winter.  
A. humid                      B. damp                      C. freezing
7. Open the window. There's a lovely cool ... outside.  
A. breeze                      B. gale                      C. gust
8. There was such a ... that my umbrella blew inside out.  
A. rain                      B. breeze                      C. gale
9. The ground was completely white. I thought it was snow at first, but it was just a heavy ... .

A. hail

B. frost

C. sleet

**10. Complete the dialogues:**

1. – What is your favourite season?

– ...

– As for me, I like...

– Me too...

2. – What's the weather like today?

– ...

– Too bad...

3. – A lovely day, isn't it?

– ...

– What do you mean by...?

– ...

– I see.

**11. Weather has given rise to some of the English idioms. Read the following ones and use them in the situations of your own.**

1. As changeable as the moon – непостійний, мінливий;

2. April weather – часта зміна настрою (то сміх, то сльози);

3. Like a weather cock in the wind – як флюгер (про людину, яка часто змінює свої погляди, переконання);

4. As welcome as a storm=as snow in a harvest – несвоєчасний;

5. Rain or sun – за будь-якої погоди;

6. A storm in a tea cup – буря в склянці води;

7. Like a bolt from the blue=like a bolt out of a clear sky – як грім серед ясного неба; як сніг на голову.

**12. Translate the text into Ukrainian:**

When you talk about weather, you are really talking about the air. Weather is what the air is like in any one place at anyone time. How hot or cold is the air? How much dampness, or moisture, is in it? How fast is the air moving? How heavily does it press on the earth?

The Oxford Dictionary defines weather as the condition of atmosphere at a certain place and time, with reference to the presence or absence of sunshine, rain, wind, etc. The Sun is basically the 'engine' that fuels the world's weather. The equator which is the area on Earth which faces closest to the Sun is heated the most while the two poles receive the least heat. The atmosphere is constantly trying to even out the temperature irregularities by carrying warm air to places which are cold and cold air to places which are warm. But evening out all these irregularities are more complex than that. Other factors such as friction with the land and sea,

rotation of the Earth and also air which is held within the confines of the atmosphere by the earth rarities. These cycles and forces create complex and ever changing patterns.

In short, weather is the way water changes in the air. Without water, there would be no clouds, rain, snow, thunder, or fog. In fact, weather plays a big part in our lives and affects many of the things that we do and also affects all things on Earth.

Weather is different at different parts of the world. For example, in deserts, it very rarely rains. In tropical jungles, it is hot and steamy. Weather keeps changing all day. On the other hand, climate stays much the same one year after another. Climate tells what the weather is like in general, all year round. For instance, tropical countries have hot climates and the Arctic has a cold climate.

However, scientists have found that some present deserts did have a more pleasant climate which is more conducive to plant life than present - the Sahara Desert is such. In other words, climatic changes have been taking place over a period of time and it would be a mistake to think that the present climate experienced would remain unto forever. Current discoveries like global warming and 'winterring' (ash caused by meteorites bombarding the earth's surface or volcanic activity which prevents the Sun's heat from reaching the Earth's surface) makes it easier to understand why some civilizations suddenly vanished.

### **13. Act as an interpreter:**

1. – What is the weather like today?
  - Дуже морозно, а також вітряно.
  - What's the temperature?
  - Біля 30 градусів морозу.
  - You don't say so! It's a pity we shan't be able to go skiing today.
  - Не біда. Я впевнений, що погода скоро зміниться, і сподіваюсь, що ми зможемо покататися на лижах наступної неділі.
  
2. – What is your favourite season? Spring, I believe?
  - Звичайно. Ви знаєте, я не люблю зиму.
  - To my mind, everybody likes spring.
  - Ви праві. Весна – найдивовижніша пора року.
  - That's it. It gets warm. The trees become green again.
  - Сонце світить дуже яскраво. Я люблю час, коли починають цвісти дерева.
  - In July it becomes hot and people start swimming.
  - Я теж дуже люблю плавати, тому завжди починаю плавати в травні.

### **14. Translate into English:**

1. Коли наближається грудень, в осінньому повітрі відчувається подих зими.
2. День за днем стає холодніше.

3. Від холоду мерзнуть руки.
4. М'які, білі лапаті сніжинки падають і вкривають товстим шаром землю та дахи.
5. Коли сосни та ялини вкриті снігом, вони виглядають чудово.
6. Товстий сніговий покрив лежить на землі, і птахи стрибають у пошуках їжі.
7. Безліч бурульок виблискують на сонці, звисаючи з дахів будинків.
8. Зима – веселий час для дітей.
9. Діти люблять ліпити сніговика і грати у сніжки.
10. Коли погода гарна, діти і дорослі йдуть кататися на лижах чи на санках з покритих снігом пагорбів.
11. Восени погода зазвичай волога. Часто йде дощ. Дме сильний вітер. Дні стоять дуже похмурі. Небо затягнуте хмарами. Вночі інколи буває сильний туман.
12. Який вологий, вітряний і похмурий день! Мряка. В таку погоду зовсім не хочеться виходити на вулицю.
13. Почалась відлига. Сніг тане. На вулиці багато калюж. На небі немає жодної хмаринки. В повітрі відчувається весна.
14. На вулиці +30 у затінку і температура продовжує підвищуватися. Спека гнітюча. Так спекотно, що неможливо знаходитися у приміщенні.
15. Встановилась холодна погода. З вчорашнього дня морозить. Сьогодні на вулиці дуже холодно.

### **III. GRAMMAR**

#### **Indirect Speech. Sequence of Tenses**

If we report what another person has said, we usually do not use the speaker's exact words (direct speech), but reported (indirect) speech. Therefore, you need to learn how to transform direct speech into reported speech. The structure is a little different depending on whether you want to transform a statement, question or request.

Besides, if the main clause is in the Past Tense the rules of sequence of tenses should be observed:

<b>Direct Speech</b>	<b>Indirect Speech</b>
Present Indefinite	Past Indefinite
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
Past Indefinite	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	Past Perfect
Future Tenses	Future-in-the-Past Tenses (would)

#### **Statements:**

- She said, "I live here." - She said that she lived there.



- She said, "I am writing a letter now." - She told me that she was writing a letter then.
- She said, "I have already written three letters." - She said that she had already written three letters.

### General questions:

- He asked, "Do you know this man?" - He asked me if I knew that man.
- He asked her, "Will you go there with me?" - He asked her whether she would go there with him.
- He asked her, "Did you go there alone?" - He asked her if she had gone there alone.

### Special questions:

- He asked, "What's the matter?" - He asked what the matter was.
- He asked me, "What are you doing?" - He asked me what I was doing.
- He asked her, "How long have you been in Moscow?" - He asked her how long she had been in Moscow.

### Commands

- She said, "Go to your room." - She told me to go to my room.
- She said, "Buy some bread, please." - She asked me to buy some bread.
- He ordered, "Stay where you are!" - He ordered them to stay where they were.

### Say and tell

If you say who you are talking to, use **tell**:

- Tom **told me** (that) he didn't like Brian, (no? Tom said me...)

Otherwise use **say**:

- Tom **said** (that) he didn't like Brian, (not Tom told (that) he...) Also: you can't say "Tom told about his trip to Mexico." You have to say:

- Tom **told us** (or me/them/Ann, etc.) about his trip to Mexico. If you don't say who he told, you have to **say**:

- Tom talked (or spoke) about his trip to Mexico, (but not said about)

It is not always necessary to change the verb when you use reported speech.

If you are reporting something and you feel that it is still true, you do not need to change the tense of the verb:

*direct* Tom said, "New York is bigger than London."

*reported* Tom said (that) New York is (or was) bigger than London.

### Shifting of expressions of time

this (evening)	that (evening)
today/this day	that day
these (days)	those (days)
now	then
(a week) ago	(a week) before
last weekend	the weekend before / the previous weekend
here	there
next (week)	the following (week)
tomorrow	the next/following day

## Compare direct speech and reported speech:

You met Jenny. Here are some of the things she said in *direct* speech:

'My parents are very well.'

'I'm going to learn to drive.'

'I want to buy a car.'

'John has a new job.'

'I can't come to the party on Friday.'

'I don't have much free time.'

'I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you when I get back.'



JENNY

Later you tell somebody what Jenny said. You use *reported* speech:

- Jenny said that her parents **were** very well.
- She said that she **was** going to learn to drive.
- She said that she **wanted** to buy a car.
- She said that John **had** a new job.
- She said that she **couldn't** come to the party on Friday.
- She said she **didn't** have much free time.
- She said that she **was** going away for a few days and **would** phone me when she got back.

### **Exercises:**

#### **I. Choose the correct variant:**

1. Mary "I love chocolate."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_ chocolate.  
a. loved  
b. loves  
c. loving
2. Mary: "I went skiing."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_ skiing.  
a. went  
b. had gone  
c. have gone
3. Mary: "I will eat steak for dinner."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_ eat steak for dinner.  
a. willing  
b. will  
c. would
4. Mary: "I have been to Sydney."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_ to Sydney.  
a. had been

- b. has been  
c. was being
5. Mary: "I have had three cars."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_\_ three cars.  
a. has  
b. has had  
c. had had
6. Mary: "I'm going to go to Long Beach."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_\_ going to go to Long Beach.  
a. is  
b. was  
c. went
7. Mary: "I don't like spinach."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_\_ like spinach.  
a. doesn't  
b. don't  
c. didn't
8. Mary: "I have never been to London."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_\_ never been to London.  
a. had  
b. has  
c. have
9. Mary: "I was swimming."  
Mary said (that) she \_\_\_\_ swimming.  
a. has been  
b. had been  
c. have been
10. Mary: "I had a cat."  
Mary said (that) she had \_\_\_\_ a cat.  
a. have  
b. has  
c. had

## II. Choose the correct form of the verb:

1. My friend asked me who (is playing, was playing) the piano in the sitting room.
2. He said he (will come, would come) to the station to see me off.
3. I was sure he (posted, had posted) the letter.
4. I think the weather (will be, would be) fine next week. I hope it (will not change, would not change) for the worse.
5. I knew that he (is, was) a very clever man.
6. I want to know what he (has bought, had bought) for her birthday.
7. I asked my sister to tell me what she (has seen, had seen) at the museum.
8. He said he (is staying, was staying) at the Ritz Hotel.

9. They realized that they (lost, had lost) their way in the dark.
10. He asked me where I (study, studied).

**III. Fill the gaps with the correct form of *say* or *tell*:**

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ on the news that everyone survived.
2. Come on. \_\_\_\_\_ me everything.
3. Richie \_\_\_\_\_ the same thing over and over again.
4. What did you \_\_\_\_\_ to him?
5. What did you \_\_\_\_\_ him?
6. He gave me his email address but he wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ what his phone number was.
7. He wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ me his phone number.
8. I thought she was my friend until I found out she'd \_\_\_\_\_ all my secrets to everyone.
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ that John's really mean with money.
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ me I wasn't invited to the wedding.
11. She \_\_\_\_\_ me all about her holiday in Sicily.
12. I couldn't understand a word of what he was trying to \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ me this funny story about what happened to him on holiday.
14. He wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ what the problem was.

**IV. Complete the sentences paying attention to the expressions of time:**

1. Emily: "Our teacher will go to Leipzig tomorrow."  
Emily said that \_\_\_\_\_
2. Helen: "I was writing a letter yesterday."  
Helen told me that \_\_\_\_\_
3. Robert: "My father flew to Dallas last year."  
Robert told me that \_\_\_\_\_
4. Lisa: "Tim went to the stadium an hour ago."  
Lisa said that \_\_\_\_\_
5. Patricia: "My mother will celebrate her birthday next weekend."  
Patricia said that \_\_\_\_\_
6. Michael: "I am going to read a book this week."  
Michael said to me that \_\_\_\_\_
7. Jason and Victoria: "We will do our best in the exams tomorrow."  
Jason and Victoria told me that \_\_\_\_\_
8. Andrew: "We didn't eat fish two days ago."  
Andrew remarked that \_\_\_\_\_
9. Alice: "I spent all my pocket money on Monday."  
Alice complained that \_\_\_\_\_
10. David: "John had already gone at six."  
David said that \_\_\_\_\_

## V. Turn into indirect speech:

a) 1. The mother said: "The children are in the nursery, doctor." 2. "I have no time for lunch today," said the boy to his mother. 3. "You speak English very well," said the woman to me. 4. My brother said to me: "I am going to become a doctor." 5. My uncle said to us: "I buy several newspapers every day." 6. The teacher said to the pupils: "Next year we shall have six hours of English a week." 7. He said to me: "I want to see you today." 8. She said: "I am free tonight". 9. Mother said to me: "I feel bad today." 10. The pupil said to the teacher: "I can do my homework after dinner." 11. The teacher said to Jack: "You work hard, I know. You are a good boy." 12. The old man said to the girl: "You can sing perfectly. I think you will be a famous singer." 13. My sister said to me: "You look very well, much better than you looked yesterday. I think you have recovered after your illness." 14. "You are an excellent cook. Everything is so tasty," said my guest to me. 15. The student said: "I can't answer this question. I don't understand it."

b) 1. Mother said to me: "Who has brought this parcel?" 2. He said to her: "Where do you usually spend your summer holidays?" 3. Ann said to Mike: "When did you leave London?" 4. She said to Boris: "When will you be back home?" 5. Boris said to them: "How can I get to the railway station?" 6. Mary asked Tom: "What time will you come here tomorrow?" 7. She asked me: "Why didn't you come here yesterday?" 8. She asked me: "What will you do tomorrow if you are not busy at your office?" 9. I said to Nick: "Where are you going?" 10. I said to him: "How long are you going to stay there?" 11. I said to him: "How long will it take you to get there?" 12. Pete said to his friends: "When are you leaving St. Petersburg?" 13. He said to them: "Who will you see before you leave here?" 14. They said to him: "What time does the train start?" 15. I asked Mike: "What will you do after dinner?" 16. I asked my uncle: "How long did you stay in the Crimea?" 17. Ada said to me: "Where did you see such trees?" 18. I said to Becky: "What kind of book has your friend brought you?"

c) 1. The teacher said to me: "Hand this note to your parents, please." 2. Oleg said to his sister: "Put the letter into an envelope and give it to Kate." 3. "Please help me with this work, Henry," said Robert. 4. "Please bring me some fish soup," he said to the waitress. 5. "Don't worry over such a small thing," she said to me. 6. "Please don't mention it to anybody," Mary said to her friend. 7. "Promise to come and see me," said Jane to Alice. 8. He said to us: "Come here tomorrow." 9. I said to Mike: "Send me a telegram as soon as you arrive." 10. Father said to me: "Don't stay there long." 11. Peter said to them: "Don't leave the room until I come back." 12. "Take my luggage to Room 145," he said to the porter. 13. He said to me: "Ring me up tomorrow." 14. "Bring me a cup of black coffee," she said to the waiter. 15. "Don't be late for dinner," said mother to us. 16. Jane said to us: "Please

tell me all you know about it." 17. She said to Nick: "Please don't say anything about it to your sister."

#### **VI. Turn into direct speech:**

1. Tom said he would go to see the doctor the next day. 2. He told me he was ill. 3. He told me he had fallen ill. 4. They told me that Tom had not come to school the day before. 5. I told my sister that she might catch cold. 6. She told me she had caught cold. 7. He said that while crossing the English Channel they had stayed on deck all the time. 8. The woman said she had felt sick while crossing the Channel. 9. She said she was feeling bad that day. 10. The old man told the doctor that he had pain in his right side. 11. He said he had just been examined by a good doctor. 12. He said he would not come to school until Monday. 13. The man said he had spent a month at a health resort. 14. He said that his health had greatly improved since then.

#### **V. WRITING**

**Write an essay on one of the following topics.**

- 1. A Lot of People Like Winter (Summer) but I Hate it.**
- 2. How the Weather Can Help People in Different Situations.**
- 3. Once I Was Caught in a Rainstorm / Snowstorm.**
- 4. How the Weather Affects Me.**

## UNIT 4

### CLIMATE

#### I. TEXT

What exactly is climate? What's the difference between climate and weather?



The Oxford Dictionary defines climate as the regular weather conditions of an area. Meanwhile weather is defined as the condition of **atmosphere** at a certain place and time, with reference to the presence or absence of sunshine, rain, wind, etc.

There are a few reasons why there are many climates on **Earth**:

- The Earth in the shape of a sphere. The **equator** is the point on Earth where it receives the most **sunlight**. Areas further away from it receive less sunlight. Therefore the Earth isn't **heated** equally.
- Some places on Earth are surrounded by oceans and bodies of water. Some are thousands of miles away from lakes, seas and oceans. These bodies of water help **reduce** the differences of temperature **throughout** the whole day. Ocean **currents** from different parts of Earth help bring cold or warm water to other places. For instance the well known Gulf Stream warms Northwest Europe a bit during winter.

Here are a few examples of major climates:

#### **Tropical climate**

Tropical climates often occur near the equator. It rains a lot throughout the year, that is about 2500 mm a year. The **average** daily temperature is 26 °C. This temperature is also constant throughout the whole year. This is because tropical areas are frequently surrounded by oceans and seas and is near the equator, which means more rain, more clouds and high humidity.

#### **Subtropical climate**

Here the climate is more **variable**. It is cooler and it rains less. The average **annual** temperature is 27 °C. Subtropical areas receive about 1000-2000 mm of rain every year.

#### **Arid climates**

**Arid** climate areas are usually **deserts**. Here it doesn't rain much, not more than 250 mm of rain each year. The air is dry. Temperatures can reach 38 °C on summer days. Night time temperatures **fluctuate** a lot. It can sometimes reach below 0 °C.

#### **Mediterranean climate**

This climate is named after the Mediterranean Sea, where this climate **occurs**. It occurs at areas around 30 °N to 45 °N or 30 °S to 45 °S. Summer in areas where Mediterranean climate occurs are short, dry and can be as warm as 29 °C. **Meanwhile** its winters are humid, long and slightly milder. Rainfall can be as high as 800 mm.

### **Temperate climates**

Temperate climates have warm, humid summers and cold winters. Up to 1500 mm of **precipitation** is gathered each year. It can snow in the winter in these areas.

### **Mountain Climates**

Temperatures here can be very cold. For every 100 m above sea level, the temperature drops by 0.6 °C. It is often windy here. Air pressure here is very low.

### **Polar Climates**

This climate occurs near the two **poles**, mainly after the Arctic and Antarctic Circles. These areas are covered by thick snow in the winter (November to March in the Arctic and May to August in the Antarctic). During winter, very little **daylight** is received, especially around the Winter **Solstice** (22 December in the Arctic and 21 June in the Antarctic). Temperatures can reach -4 °C. Summer temperatures can be as high as 10 °C. During the Winter Solstice, the Sun never rises. The opposite happens during the Summer Solstice (21 June in the Arctic and 22 December in the Antarctic), the Sun never sets. Annual precipitation is only 300 mm in the form of snow. Winds here are very fast, sometimes **exceeding** 200 km per hour.

(<http://library.thinkquest.org/26804/weather.html>)

## **Vocabulary Notes**

**atmosphere** – *n* 1. [count., uncount.] the feeling that a place, situation, or event gives you (атмосфера)

*E.g.* The atmosphere at home was tense.

*atmosphere of*

*E.g.* an atmosphere of excited expectation.

2. [sing.] the mixture of gases that surrounds the Earth or another planet.

**Earth** – *n* the planet that we live on (Земля)

*E.g.* The earth revolves around the sun.

**equator** – *n* the imaginary line around the Earth that is exactly the same distance from the North Pole and the South Pole (екватор)

**sunlight** – *n* [uncount.] natural light that comes from the sun (сонячне світло)

*E.g.* He stepped out into strong sunlight.

**to heat** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to become warm or hot, or to make something warm or hot (обігрівати)

*E.g.* Heat the milk until it boils.



**to reduce** – *v* [trans.] to make something become less in size, amount, price etc (зменшувати)

*E.g.* They're trying to reduce the number of students in the college.

**throughout** – *adv, prep* in every part of a place (скрізь)

*E.g.* Thanksgiving is celebrated throughout the US.

**current** – *n* 1. [count.] a flow of water or air in a particular direction (течія)

*E.g.* Strong currents are dangerous for swimmers.

**average** – *adj* [only before noun] the average amount is the amount you get when you add together several figures and divide this by the total number of figures (середній)

*E.g.* The average cost of making a movie has risen by 15%.

**variable** – *adj* likely to change often or to be different (мінливий)

*E.g.* a variable rate of interest

**annual** – *adj* happening once every year (щорічний)

*E.g.* the annual conference

**arid** – *adj formal* very dry and with very little rain (сухий)

*E.g.* arid land • an arid climate

**desert** – *n* [count., uncount.] a large area of very hot dry land where few plants grow (пустеля)

*E.g.* the Sahara desert

**to fluctuate** – *v* [intrans.] if an amount fluctuates, it keeps changing from a higher to a lower level and back again (коливатися)

*E.g.* The price of copper fluctuated wildly.

**to occur** – *v* [intrans.] to happen or exist, especially in a particular place or situation (траплятися)

*E.g.* Major earthquakes like this occur very rarely.

**meanwhile** – *adv* while something else is happening, or in the time between two events (тим часом)

*E.g.* Bill took the dogs out. Meanwhile, I fed the cats.

**precipitation** – *n* [uncount.] *formal* rain or snow (опад)

**pole** – *n* [count.] the most northern and southern point on Earth (полюс)

*E.g.* an expedition to the North Pole

**daylight** – *n* [uncount.] the light produced by the sun during the day (сонячне світло)

*E.g.* A young girl has been attacked in broad daylight (=during the day when it is light).

**Solstice** – *n* [count.] the longest or the shortest day of the year (сонцестояння)

*the summer/winter solstice*

**to exceed** – *v* [trans.] *formal* to go beyond a particular amount or level (перевищувати)

*E.g.* His performance exceeded our expectations.

## EXERCISES

### I. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:

*absence, deserts, oceans, milder, throughout, Earth, condition, equally, warms, pressure.*

1. the \_\_\_\_\_ of atmosphere;
2. presence or \_\_\_\_\_ of sunshine, rain, wind;
3. the equator in the point on \_\_\_\_\_;
4. the Earth isn't heated \_\_\_\_\_;
5. surrounded by \_\_\_\_\_ and bodies of water;
6. the well known Gulf Stream \_\_\_\_\_ Northwest Europe;
7. it rains a lot \_\_\_\_\_ the year;
8. arid climate areas are usually \_\_\_\_\_;
9. its winters are humid, long and slightly \_\_\_\_\_;
10. air \_\_\_\_\_ here is very low.

### II. Fill in the correct prepositions:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the shape \_\_\_\_\_ a sphere;
2. the difference \_\_\_\_\_ climate and weather;
3. the regular weather conditions \_\_\_\_\_ an area;
4. some are thousands \_\_\_\_\_ miles away \_\_\_\_\_ lakes, seas and ocean;
5. ocean currents \_\_\_\_\_ different parts \_\_\_\_\_ Earth;
6. tropical areas are frequently surrounded \_\_\_\_\_ oceans and seas;
7. it can snow \_\_\_\_\_ the winter \_\_\_\_\_ these areas;
8. the temperature drops \_\_\_\_\_ 0.6 °C;
9. 300 mm \_\_\_\_\_ the form \_\_\_\_\_ snow;
10. sometimes exceeding 200 km \_\_\_\_\_ hour.

### III. Guess the type of climate:

- ✓ It rains a lot throughout the year, that is about 2500 mm a year.
- ✓ This climate occurs near the two poles.
- ✓ Air pressure here is very low.
- ✓ Summer are short, dry and can be as warm as 29 °C.
- ✓ Up to 1500 mm of precipitation is gathered each year.
- ✓ Here it doesn't rain much, not more than 250 mm of rain each year.
- ✓ Here the climate is more variable. It is cooler and it rains less.

### IV. Match the vocabulary word on the left with the correct definition on the right:

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| A. mud season ____      | 1. warm temperatures after the first frost in the fall. |
| B. winter solstice ____ | 2. the amount of moisture in the air.                   |
| C. spring equinox ____  | 3. a time of impassable roads.                          |

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| D. Indian summer ____ | 4. person who studies weather.                    |
| E. thaw ____          | 5. the average weather conditions over the years. |
| F. humidity ____      | 6. December 21 or 22.                             |
| G. climate ____       | 7. March 21 or 22.                                |
| H. meteorologist ____ | 8. average, not severe.                           |
| I. moderate ____      | 9. period when snow and ice melts.                |

**V. Study the text and answer the questions:**

1. What is climate?
2. What are the main reasons why there are many climates on Earth?
3. What are major climates?
4. What is the difference between tropical and subtropical climate?
5. Where are arid climate areas? What are their peculiar features?
6. What is Winter Solstice?
7. What happens during the Summer Solstice?

**VI. Retell the text.**

**II. TOPIC**

**1) The British Climate**

The climate of Britain is more or less the same as that of the north-western part of the European mainland. The popular belief that it rains all the time in Britain is simply not true. The image of a wet, foggy land was created two thousand years ago by the invading Romans and has been perpetuated in modern times by Hollywood.



The amount of rain that falls on a town in Britain depends on where it is. Generally speaking, the further west you go, the more rain you get. The mild winters mean that snow is a regular feature of the higher areas only. Occasionally, a whole winter goes by in lowerlying parts without any snow at all.

The winters are in general a bit colder in the east of the country than they are in the west, while in summer, the south is slightly warmer and sunnier than in the north.

Why has Britain's climate got such a bad reputation? Perhaps it is for the same reason that British people always seem to be talking about the weather. This is its changeability. There are many jokes about the English climate. One of them is that there is no climate in England, only weather. And it is true that there is no time of the year when we can really count on its being fine or rainy, warm or cold.

It may not rain very much altogether, but you can never be sure of a dry day; there can be cool (even cold) days in July and quite warm days in January.

When two Englishmen meet, their first words will be "How do you do?" or "How are you?" and after the reply "Very well, thank you. How are you?" the next remark is almost certain to be about the weather. It is almost a formality, like shaking hands. "Yes, it's wonderful weather we are having. I hope it will keep fine, it seems almost too good to last long", or "How do you do? A bit parky, isn't it?" Parky means cold, and it is only used when talking about the weather. Other typical comments on the weather are, "What is the weather like down your way?" or "What time did the rain get to your part of the world?"

Then there are people who pretend they know exactly what the weather will do next. That sort of person is always convinced that it will get worse.

English people are apt to complain of the British climate as being damp and rainy, and foreigners laugh at it and say that the English summer is made up of three fine days and a thunderstorm.

The British Isles which are surrounded by the ocean have an insular climate. The three things that chiefly determine the climate of England are: (1) the position of the island in the temperature belt; (2) the fact that the prevailing winds blow from the west and south-west; (3) the warm current - the Gulf Stream that flows from the Gulf of Mexico, along the western shores of England.

The climate is mild. It is hard to say that England has typical weather because of the sudden changes that occur - showers from what was only a few hours before a clear blue sky; sunshine that makes you want to leave off most of your clothes followed by winds that set you wishing for two overcoats. The winter fogs are, indeed, awful; they surpass all imagination.

So, what is the weather like in England in winter? The temperature seldom falls below 3 or 4 degrees. The usual temperature is about zero; the landscape doesn't change very much in winter. The grass remains green all the year round. The air is frequently damp and foggy. It often rains and it seldom snows. The snow usually melts very quickly. The English ports are ice-free and its rivers are not frozen throughout the year. But still, in the winter months, Britain is affected by Polar air. Then there is a cold, dry, biting wind which brings black frosts. February and March are the months with most snow though it can fall as late as June in the Scottish Highlands.

The seasons do not differ too sharply from one another, one merges gradually into another. Spring comes slowly in England and it grows warmer gradually. Spring is the driest season. Cold, dry winds blow, the skies are calm and clear. The weather in spring, however, is changeable, and even if the sky is blue, without a single cloud in the morning, it is always wise to take a mac or an umbrella.

In early summer the winds send fine sunny weather with blue skies in which clouds may build up by day and die away at night. If the temperature goes above

23 or 25 degrees they call it a heatwave, because it is above the usual average temperature for their summers. Thunderstorms are common in summer and the counties in the east get most rain in this season. But the rain is heavier in the hills and it is here that great floods occur which do the most damage in narrow valleys.

Because of its climate England is a land of gardens and flowers. Indeed, they have flowers all the year round. Roses, for example, can be found in flower-beds from late spring until December.

In early autumn, especially after a fine summer, the air is damp as the sun sinks lower. The temperature falls and mist and fog form in the evening after a fine day. At first they melt in the warmth of the early morning sun but as the days get shorter they may last throughout the day. At other times strong winds bring stormy weather with heavy rains and gales.

The English people find it difficult to convince foreigners that England is not always, or most of the year covered with a thick blanket of fog. It is true that they do have some fog, but only rarely there is such a thick fog that all the traffic comes to a standstill. These thick fogs that are called "pea-soupers" (pea-soup fogs) belonging more to fiction than to fact are very bad for the lungs and can kill people who suffer from bronchitis or asthma.

The weather changes with the change of the season. Winter cold comes back when spring seems already to be here, or warm fine summer days return in mid-October (Indian summer) gilding the autumn leaves.

The highlands and the mountains lie mainly in the west and are affected by the winds off the ocean. The plains lie mainly in the east, and are affected by frosts and drought. But there is a feel of wind almost everywhere. The moods of British weather are really surprising. On the whole the warm moist winds off the warm waters of the North Atlantic Drift are so common that the general climate is very mild.

Droughts occur, but crops are never a complete loss, nor do animals perish. Sometimes a little whirlwind (a "twister") can destroy houses, heavy snowfalls and the much commoner icy roads can stop traffic but fog is the greatest disaster that can happen, causing accidents on roads and railways. These events fill the newspapers, but in contrast with the heatwaves in New York, or blizzards on the prairies, floods in China, droughts in Australia, hurricanes in Florida or tornadoes in Kansas, British weather seems indeed mild.

In England they always have the weather to talk about. So whenever you strike up a conversation in England, may be at the barber's, in the street or on a train journey, you inevitably get around to two subjects - the weather and sport, which are as much part of English life as bacon and eggs, roast beef and the Houses of Parliament.

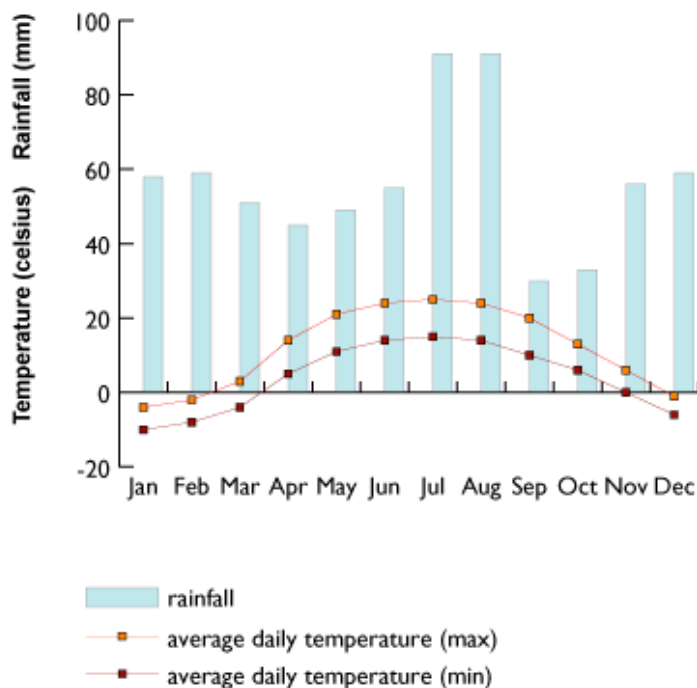
## 2) Climate in Ukraine

Ukraine is situated in two climatic zones – moderate (the plains and both the mountain ranges) and Mediterranean subtropics (the southern shore of Crimea).

Generally, Ukraine is one of the climatically comfortable countries. The number of hours of sunlight varies from 1700 in the north to more than 2400 in the south. The temperatures vary predominantly from the north to the south, in the Ukrainian Carpathians – from the northwest to the southeast. The lowest temperature of January and February is  $-7... -8^{\circ}\text{C}$  (on the plains of Crimea –  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ , on it's southern shore – up to  $+3... +4^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The highest average July temperature is  $+17... +19^{\circ}\text{C}$  (north and northwest) and  $+22... +23^{\circ}\text{C}$  (south and southeast). In the Carpathians it can go down to  $+13... +14^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and to  $+16^{\circ}\text{C}$  in the Crimean Mountains.

The amount of rainfall decreases from the north and northwest to the south and southeast. Most of it falls during the warm time of the year (except on the southern shore of Crimea). The highest amount of rainfall is in the Carpathians (1500 mm) and in the Crimean Mountains (1000-1200 mm), whereas the least falls on the shores of Black and Azov seas (300-450 mm), in the western part of Ukraine (600–650 mm) and in the southwest (400-450 mm).

There is a clearly defined change of seasons during the year. The winters are long but relatively warm, with frost and snow. In the Ukrainian Carpathians it lasts 120–130 days, in the north of Crimea – 75-90 and not more than 85 days on in the far south and southwest (influenced by the warm air currents from the Atlantic and the Mediterranean).



Spring starts when the average temperatures cross 0°C, but frosts are still possible. Spring first touches the southwest and Crimea and it makes its way north from the south in approximately 37 days.

The summer starts when the temperature reaches 15°C and is warm in most regions, hot in Crimea. The temperatures can reach +34... +39°C when the air currents from Africa reach Ukraine through the Mediterranean. The summer lasts from 120 to 150 days.

In the autumn the temperatures drop and some frosts are possible, the number of rains and fogs increases. Autumn lasts from 70 days in the southwest to 90 days in Zakarpattia. Rarely some very warm periods are possible.

The climate of large cities and seas can differ, in some aspects. For example, in winter Kyiv experiences some cyclones that cause unstable weather. Strong winds happen rarely and the lowest temperatures of -10°C and less fall on January and February. The autumns in Kyiv are predominantly warm, springs – sunny and rainy.

To conclude the weather conditions in Ukraine have positive influence on various industries and development of tourism and recreation.

### **Some Climate Terms:**

**Air mass** – a large body of air that has similar temperature, pressure and moisture properties.

**Anticyclone** – high pressure system in which air descends to give calm conditions and clear skies. Associated with summer heatwaves and winter frosts and fogs.

**Atmosphere** – the envelope of air surrounding the Earth and bound to it by gravity.

**Atmospheric pressure** – pressure (force per unit area) exerted by the atmosphere on any surface by virtue of its weight.

**Climate** – long-term (50 year) weather averages.

**Continental climate** – a climate with a high temperature range away from the influence of the sea. Winters will be colder and summers warmer compared to a coastal location for the same latitude.

**Evaporation** - the physical process by which a liquid or solid substance is transformed to a gas; the opposite of condensation.

**Fog** – saturated air with visibility below one kilometre. Fog differs from cloud only in that the base of fog is at the Earth's surface while clouds are above the surface.

**Front** – the meeting point between two air masses of different density. Since the temperature is the most important regulator of the atmosphere density, a front almost invariably separates air masses of different temperature. When warmer air replaces the colder, it is a warm front, and a front is a cold one when the opposite occurs.

**Humidity** – water vapor content of the air.

**Maritime climate** – a climate with a low temperature range influenced by proximity to the sea. Winters will be warmer and summers cooler compared to a continental location for the same latitude.

**Precipitation** – any of all of the forms of water particles, whether liquid or solid, that fall from the atmosphere and reach the ground. The forms of precipitation are: rain, drizzle, snow, snow grains, snow pellets, diamond dust, hail, and ice pellets.

**Smog** – a word currently used as a synonym for general air pollution. It was originally created by combining the words "smoke" and "fog."

**Temperature** – a physical quantity characterizing the mean random motion of molecules in a physical body. In other words, it is a measure of the degree of hotness or coldness of a substance.

**Weather** – the state of the atmosphere, mainly with respect to its effects upon life and human activities. As distinguished from climate, weather consists of the short-term (minutes to about 15 days) variations of the atmosphere state.

**Wind** – movement of air caused by changes in temperature and air pressure. Winds are always identified by the compass direction from which they blow.

## *EXERCISES*

### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. Is the climate of Britain different from that of the north-western part of the European mainland?
2. Why do English people always seem to be talking about the weather?
3. What do Englishmen usually start talking about when they meet?
4. What are the three things that chiefly determine the climate of England?
5. What is the weather like in Britain in winter?
6. What does the cold winter wind bring?
7. Which months are marked by most snow?
8. Which is the driest season in Britain?
9. What is the weather like in Britain in spring?
10. Are thunderstorms common in summer?
11. What is the weather like in Britain in autumn?
12. Why is the climate of the British Isles mild?

### **2. Find factual information in the text 1 to prove that:**

1. The climate of Great Britain is more or less the same as that of the north-western part of the European mainland.
2. There are many jokes about the English climate.
3. It is hard to say that England has typical weather.
4. Winters in England are not so cold as in Russia
5. Spring comes slowly in England.



6. England is a land of gardens and flowers.
7. Fog is the greatest disaster that can happen.
8. British weather can be favourably compared with the weather of other countries.

### 3. Fill in the necessary words:

*centigrade, day, Englishman, fog, break, midday, foreigner, meteorological, seasons, extreme.*

“Other countries have a climate; in England we have weather.” This statement, often made by Englishmen to describe the peculiar \_\_\_\_\_ (1) conditions of their country, is both revealing and true. It is revealing because in it we see the \_\_\_\_\_ (2) insisting once again that what happens in England is not the same as what happens elsewhere; its truth can be ascertained by any \_\_\_\_\_ (3) who stays in the country for longer than a few days.

In no country other than England, it has been said, can one experience four \_\_\_\_\_ (4) in the course of a single day! Day may \_\_\_\_\_ (5) as a balmy spring morning; an hour or so later black clouds may have appeared from nowhere and the rain may be pouring down. At \_\_\_\_\_ (6) conditions may be really wintry with the temperature down by about eight degrees or more \_\_\_\_\_ (7). And then, in the late afternoon the sky will clear, the sun will begin to shine, and for an hour or two before darkness falls, it will be summer.

In England one can experience almost every kind of weather except the most \_\_\_\_\_ (8). (Some foreigners, incidentally seem to be under the impression that for ten months of the year the country is covered by a dense blanket of \_\_\_\_\_ (9); this is not true.) The snag is that we never can be sure when the different types of weather will occur. Not only do we get several different sorts of weather in one \_\_\_\_\_ (10), but we may very well get a spell of winter in summer and vice versa.

### 4. Translate the following texts into Ukrainian. Retell the texts in English:

#### a) It is Raining Cats and Dogs

When it pours with rain we often say: “It’s raining cats and dogs.” But we don’t know why, and what this saying’s original meaning was. In distant times, people thought that witches could turn themselves into cats and ride across the stormy skies on their broomsticks, and cats were thought to be a big influence on the weather. The dog was the servant of the North storm God, Odin, and represented the wind. Cats and dogs from that time have meant the wind and the rain.

#### b) London Fogs

Because of its geographical position in a deep river valley London is occasionally enveloped by unusually thick fog. The worst of these fogs began on December 4th, 1952 and there was a similar one in December 1962. All traffic was

forced to a standstill as visibility fell to nil. The streets near the centre of London were jammed with buses crawling along at two miles per hour.

At Convent Garden a performance of La Traviata had to be abandoned after the first act because so much fog penetrated into the building that the audience could no longer see the singers clearly. It was a terrible fog and counted the death of some 4.000 people in London.

As a matter of fact this “deadly” kind of fog is called by Londoners “smog”. It is the kind of fog you get only in towns - particularly in the industrial areas. It is a mixture of smoke and fog together, and it is dangerous and deadly especially for people who are suffering from any kind of respiratory troubles.

And this now belongs to the past. In 1959 the Clean Air Council began their work of freeing London from the worst kinds of smoke. Now it is no longer allowed to make a fire with ordinary coal, only smokeless fuel can be used. Sunshine in winter has increased by 50 per cent. London has become a fairly clean city, cleaner than most large capitals in the world.

### **5. Translate the text into English:**

Клімат України визначається її географічним положенням. Територія України знаходиться в помірному поясі, тому її клімат помірно-континентальний, лише на південному березі Криму – субтропічний. Клімат України характеризується значними варіаціями завдяки великій протяжності з півночі на південь та з заходу на схід, і протяжності від областей, які знаходяться під впливом північно-західної Атлантики до внутрішніх континентальних районів. Це означає, що температура повітря знижується не лише з півночі на південь, але й зі сходу на захід. Характерні риси клімату – висока температура влітку, низька взимку, нечасті дощі.

Клімат України вирізняється мінливістю погодних умов з року в рік. Поряд з дуже вологими роками можуть бути посушливі роки, а поряд з дуже холодними – теплі.

Чорне і Азовське моря мало впливають на клімат, і їх вплив відчувається лише в прибережних районах. Найтепліший район знаходиться поряд з Чорним морем, а найхолодніший – на північному сході і в горах. Південне узбережжя Криму – це субтропіки. Кримські гори перешкоджають просуванню холодного арктичного повітря на узбережжі і створюють умови для однієї з найкращих курортних зон України.

Середньорічна температура в Україні варіюється від +5..+7 С на півночі до +11..+13 С на півдні. Січень – найхолодніший місяць, а липень – найспекотніший.

В цілому Україна може бути поділена на чотири різні кліматичні регіони: холодний і сніговий лісовий клімат, степовий клімат, середземноморський клімат і клімат тундри.

### **III. GRAMMAR**

#### **Indirect Speech. Sequence of Tenses**

##### **Exercises:**

##### **I. Turn into indirect speech:**

a) 1. I said to Mike: "Have you packed your suitcase?" 2. I said to Kate: "Did anybody meet you at the station?" 3. I said to her: "Can you give me their address?" 4. I asked Tom: "Have you had breakfast?" 5. I asked my sister: "Will you stay at home or go for a walk after dinner?" 6. I said to my mother: "Did anybody come to see me?" 7. I asked my sister: "Will Nick call for you on the way to school?" 8. She said to the young man: "Can you call a taxi for me?" 9. Mary said to Peter: "Have you shown your photo to Dick?" 10. Oleg said to me: "Will you come here tomorrow?" 11. He said to us: "Did you go to the museum this morning?" 12. I said to Boris: "Does your friend live in London?" 13. I said to the man: "Are you living in a hotel?" 14. Nick said to his friend: "Will you stay at the "Hilton"?" 15. He said to me: "Do you often go to see your friends?" 16. He said to me "Will you see your friends before you leave St. Petersburg?" 17. Mike said to Jane: "Will you come to the railway station to see me off?" 18. She said to me: "Have you sent them a telegram?" 19. She said to me: "Did you send them a telegram yesterday?"

b) 1. "Do you like my pies, Ann?" asked her grandmother. 2. "Sit down at the table and do your homework," said Tom's mother to him. 3. "What did you do at school yesterday, John?" said his father. 4. "Will you play the piano today, Helen?" asked her aunt. 5. My uncle said: "We shall visit you next week." 6. "Don't cross the street under the red light," said the man to Nick. 7. "I took a very good book from our library yesterday," said Mike to his father. 8. "Come to my house tomorrow, Jane," said Lena. 9. "Where are your books, Betsy?" said her mother.

c) 1. She said: "I am busy today and I shall be busier tomorrow." 2. Jane said: "I shall come to school early tomorrow." 3. They said: "We shall not go to school on Sunday." 4. Mr. Dickson said: "I shall have to pay a lot of money for the car." 5. Peter said to me: "I'll be waiting for you at the station." 6. Mary said: "I'll be back soon." 7. She said to me: "What are you going to do when you come home?" 8. She said: "I hope I'll soon speak English well." 9. He said: "I am sure it will rain tomorrow." 10. They said: "We shall go to the river tomorrow if it is hot." 11. He said: "I am sure she will come in time." 12. She said: "I shall be able to read English newspapers without a dictionary next year."

d) 1. "Lock the door when you leave the house," said my elder sister to me. 2. "Have you received a telegram from your wife?" she asked Robert. 3. Mabel

said: "Nothing will change my decision and I shall leave for Cape Town tonight." 4. "Please don't smoke in the room," said the old woman to her nephew. 5. "I am shivering with cold," said the girl. 6. "I want to sit in the armchair," said the boy. 7. The secretary said to me: "The delegation arrived in St. Petersburg yesterday." 8. "Open the window, please," she said to me. 9. He said: "I shall light a fire and make myself breakfast." 10. "Don't run to the door when you hear the bell," said the woman to her little daughter. 11. She asked me: "How long are you going to stay here?" 12. Mary asked me: "Will you spend your vacation in Moscow?"

e) 1. "When did you receive this letter?" my friend said to me. 2. "Will you play football with us?" said the boys to Peter. 3. "Tom, go to bed," said his mother. 4. "I have never seen your toys," said Nellie to Pete. 5. "Give me your record book, Nick," said the teacher. 6. Ann said to Lena: "Look at my nice kitten." 7. "We shall go to the zoo tomorrow," said our grandmother. 8. Mother said to Pete: "Don't forget to wash your hands." 9. Nick said to his mother: "I am doing my homework." 10. "I have learnt a long poem," said Mike to the teacher. 11. "Don't play in the street," said the man to the boys. 12. "Why don't you drink your tea?" said my mother to me. 13. "I saw my friend at the stadium yesterday," said Johnny to his mother.

f) 1. The teacher said to us: "You will have to work hard tomorrow." 2. My girlfriend said to me: "I shall not be able to go for a walk with you today, because I am very busy." 3. She said to me: "How long are you going to stay in the country?" 4. He said to me: "I like to go to the canteen during the break." 5. He asked me: "When will you go to the canteen?" 6. John said: "I met them at the airport yesterday." 7. He said: "I shall come to the party if I am free tomorrow." 8. She said: "I shall go to the cinema in the evening if I am not very tired." 9. My mother said to me: "It will be difficult for you to get up tomorrow if you don't go to bed at once." 10. Nina said: "I like music and I listen to it every evening before going to bed." 11. My aunt said: "I shall not be thirsty if I eat some grapes." 12. Mother said to us: "Don't go out before I return." 13. My sister said: "I shall be neither hungry nor thirsty if I have a cup of tea with a sandwich." 14. Mary said: "Don't switch on TV, Fred, I am working."

## **II. Turn into direct speech:**

1. I asked him if the doctor had given him some medicine. I asked him if he was feeling better now. 2. I asked the man how long he had been in St. Petersburg. 3. I asked him if he was going to a health resort. 4. We asked the girl if her father was still in Moscow. 5. I asked the girl what sort of work her father did. 6. I asked if they had taken the sick man to hospital. 7. I asked my friend if he had a headache. 8. I wanted to know when he had fallen ill. 9. I wondered if he had taken his temperature.

### III. Translate into English paying attention to the sequence of tenses:

а) 1. Я знала, що вона працює на заводі, що в неї є чоловік і двоє дітей, що сім'я у неї дуже дружна і вона щаслива. 2. Він сказав мені вчора, що раніше навчався в університеті. 3. Ми вирішили минулого тижня, що наступного літа ми всі поїдемо в Крим. 4. Сестра сказала, що хоче приїхати до нас сама. 5. Я знала, що вона дуже зайнята. 6. Ніхто не знав, що ви чекаєте тут. 7. Гід попередив нас, що в цій частині міста рух досить поживлений. 8. Секретар не помітив, що директор з кимось розмовляє. 9. Всі ми знали, що її сім'я знову в Києві. 10. Олена сказала, що вона дарує нам цю картину. 11. Вона сказала, що її колеги завжди дають їй прекрасні поради. 12. Він сказав, що любить цю п'єсу. 13. Минулого року вони думали, що ніколи не будуть добре читати англійською. 14. Він сказав мені вчора, що його батько – професор і живе в Москві.

б) 1. Я боявся, що заблукаю в лісі. 2. Вона знала, що ми ніколи не бачили її картини. 3. Вчений був впевнений, що знайде рішення проблеми. 4. Я знав, що ти приїхав у Луцьк, і гадав, що ти провідаєш мене. 5. Ми не думали, що він так розсердиться. 6. Ми вчора дізналися, що вона хвора. 7. Він думав, що вона не прийде до школи. 8. Я знав, що моя сестра вивчає французьку мову, і думав, що вона поїде в Париж. 9. Мені сказали, що ти мені телефонував. 10. Я думав, що ти в Москві. 11. Я не знав, що ти вже повернувся в Луцьк. 12. Ми надіялись, що поїдемо в Лондон. 13. Вчитель сказав, що наші друзі прислали лист з Лондона. 14. Вона сказала, що її подруга запросила її в театр. 15. Ми боялись, що не купимо квитки в театр. 16. Ми побачили, що діти граються в піску. 17. Вона сказала, що більше не буде купатися, тому що вода холодна. 18. Моя двоюрідна сестра сказала, що любить оперу и буде рада піти з нами в театр.

### IV. Complete the sentences:

- 1) They answered...
- 2) We supposed...
- 3) He showed...
- 4) I found...
- 5) She heard...
- 6) The family watched...
- 7) I believed...
- 8) The father expected...
- 9) They saw...
- 10) You noted...
- 11) We remembered...
- 12) My brother enjoyed...
- 13) They reported...
- 14) His sister liked...

#### **V. Turn the dialogues into indirect speech:**

- a) - Well, I can't get used to such weather. It can change several times a day. It may be hot in the morning and very cold in the evening.
- Yes, that's just what happened yesterday.
  - And weather forecasts aren't very helpful, are they?
  - No, not very often. But there's nothing to be done, you'll have to put up with it.
- b) - Oh, that's you Tony. What is it like outdoors?
- It seems to be clearing up.
  - What do you mean by clearing up?
  - A big improvement on what we've been having. Quite different from the forecast.
  - They say we are in for snow. It's supposed to cloud over this afternoon.
  - Let's hope it keeps fine for the weekend.

#### ***IV. WRITING***

**Write an essay on one of the following topics:**

- 1. Climate of the USA.**
- 2. Climate Problems of the Modern World.**
- 3. Climate in Ukraine and Great Britain (comparison).**

## MODULE 3

### UNIT 5

#### AT THE DOCTOR'S HEALTH & MEDICINE

#### IV. TEXT

##### A Day's Wait

He came into the room to shut the windows while we were still in bed and I saw he looked ill. He was **shivering**, his face was white, and he walked slowly as though it **ached** to move.

“What's the matter, **Schatz**?”

“I've got a **headache**.”

“You'd better go back to bed.”

“No, I'm all right.”

“You go to bed. I'll see you when I'm dressed.”

But when I came downstairs he was dressed, sitting by the fire, looking a very **sick** and miserable boy of nine years. When I put my hand on his forehead I knew he had a **fever**.

“You go up to bed,” I said, “you're sick.”

“I'm all right,” he said.

When the doctor came he took the boy's temperature.

“What is it?” I asked him.

“**One hundred and two**.”

Downstairs, the doctor left three different **medicines** in different colored capsules with instructions for giving them. One was **to bring down** the fever, another a **purgative**, the third **to overcome** an acid condition. The **germs of influenza** can only exist in an acid condition, he explained. He seemed to know all about influenza and said there was nothing to worry about if the fever did not go above one hundred and four degrees. This was a light epidemic of flu and there was no danger if you avoided **pneumonia**.

Back in the room I wrote the boy's temperature down and made a note of the time to give the various capsules.

“Do you want me to read to you?”

“All right, if you want to,” said the boy. His face was very white and there were dark areas under his eyes. He lay still in the bed and seemed very **detached** from what was going on.

I read aloud from Howard Pyle's “Book of Pirates”, but I could see he was not following what I was reading.

“How do you feel, Schatz?” I asked him.

“Just the same, so far,” he said.

I sat at the foot of the bed and read to myself while I waited for it to be time to give another capsule. It would have been natural for him to go to sleep, but when I looked up he was looking at the foot of the bed, looking very **strangely**.

“Why don't you try to go to sleep? I'll wake you up for the medicine.”

“I'd rather stay awake.”

After a while he said to me, “You don't have to stay in here with me, Papa, if it **bothers** you.”

“It doesn't bother me.”

“No, I mean you don't have to stay if it's going to bother you.”

I thought perhaps he was a little **light-headed** and after giving him the prescribed capsules at eleven o'clock I went out for a while.

It was a bright, cold day, the ground covered with a sleet that had frozen so that it seemed as if all the bare trees, the bushes, the cut brush and all the grass and the bare ground had been varnished with ice. I took the young Irish setter for a little walk up the road and along a frozen creek.

At the house they said the boy had refused to let any one come into the room.

“You can't come in,” he said. “You mustn't get what I have.” I went up to him and found him in exactly the position I had left him, staring still, as he had stared, at the foot of the bed.

I took his temperature.

“What is it?”

“Something like a hundred,” I said. It was one hundred and two and four tenths.

“It was a hundred and two,” he said.

“Who said so?”

“The doctor.”

“Your temperature is all right,” I said. “It's nothing to worry about.”

“I don't worry,” he said, “but I can't keep from thinking.”

“Don't think,” I said. “Just **take it easy**.”

“I'm taking it easy,” he said and looked worried about something.

“Take this with water.”

“Do you think it will do any good?”

“Of course, it will.”

I sat down and opened the Pirate Book and commenced to read but I could see he was not following, so I stopped.

“About what time do you think I'm going to die?” he asked.

“What?”

“About how long will it be before I die?”

“You aren't going to die. What's the matter with you?”

“Oh, yes, I am. I heard him say a hundred and two.”



“People don't die with a fever of one hundred and two. That's a silly way to talk!”

“I know they do. At school in France the boys told me you can't live with forty-four degrees. I've got a hundred and two.”

He had been waiting to die all day, ever since nine o'clock in the morning..

“You poor Schatz,” I said. “Poor old Schatz, it's like miles and kilometers. You aren't going to die. That's a different thermometer. On that thermometer thirty-seven is normal. On this kind it's ninety-eight.”

“Are you sure?”

“Absolutely,” I said. “It's like miles and kilometers. You know, like how many kilometers we make when we do seventy miles in the car?”

“Oh,” he said.

But his **gaze** at the foot of the bed relaxed slowly. The hold over himself relaxed too, finally, and the next day it was very **slack** and he cried very easily at little things that were of no importance.

(by Ernest Hemingway)

### Vocabulary Notes

**to shiver** – *v* [intrans.] if you shiver, your body shakes slightly because you are cold or frightened [= tremble] (тремтіти)

*E.g.* Come inside, you're shivering.

*shiver with cold/fear/delight etc*

**to ache** – *v* [intrans.] if part of your body aches, you feel a continuous pain there (боліти)

*ache from (doing) something*

*E.g.* My legs were aching from walking so far.

**headache** – *n* [count.] 1. a pain in your head (головний біль)

*E.g.* I've got a splitting headache (=very bad headache).

2. a serious problem that you worry about

**Schatz** (*German*) = darling (дорогий)

### Pay Attention!

#### **PAIN and ACHE**

Both of these words are most commonly used as nouns. They refer to unpleasant sensations that you feel in your body, although they are slightly different feelings. A **pain** is usually used to refer to a kind of sharp discomfort that is difficult to ignore. For example:

*Yesterday I suddenly felt a lot of pain in my stomach. I was taken to hospital where they discovered I had appendicitis.*

**Ache** is similar to **pain**, but it usually is used to refer to a duller kind of discomfort that may continue for longer than a pain might. Common examples are:

**headache, stomach ache, backache and heartache**

Note that heartache is used to refer to a kind of emotional pain, for example if you are in love with someone and they are not treating you well you can say:

*He is causing me a lot of heartache.*

Less commonly, both **pain** and **ache** can be used as verbs. **Pain** in this form means to cause someone unhappiness. Note that you cannot use **pain** in the continuous form in standard UK or US English.

*It pains me to think of you being so unhappy with your life – meaning it makes me feel unhappy that you are so sad.*

You can also use **ache** as a verb. Unlike **pain**, **ache** can be used in the progressive form. For example:

*My back is really aching.*

*I wish my leg would stop hurting, it really aches.*

Interestingly, you can also use the expression aches and pains to refer to a general feeling of being unwell.

## **HURT**

**Hurt** is a little bit different to the others in that it is commonly used as a verb and an adjective and, less commonly, as a noun. Of the above words, **hurt** is probably most similar to **pain** and **ache** and it can also mean the same as injure or injured. The key difference between **hurt** and **pain** and **ache** is that usually if you are **hurt**, it means the discomfort you experience is clearly caused by something outside of yourself. However, **pain** and **ache** suggest a more internal reason for the unpleasant physical feeling. Here are two examples:

*Be careful on that ladder, you might hurt yourself if you fall* – here it is used as a verb

*He was badly hurt in the train crash* – here it is used as an adjective

When it's used as a noun, **hurt** usually refers to some emotional pain. For example:

*When he told her he wanted a divorce she could hear a lot of hurt in his voice.*

**sick** – *adj* 1. feel sick – to feel ill in your stomach and as if you might vomit [carsick, seasick] (нудить)

*E.g. I felt really sick. • Coffee makes me feel sick.*

2. ill (хворий)

*E.g. a hospital for sick children*

## **SICK and ILL**

Both of these words are most commonly used as adjectives, as in:

*I feel sick.*

*Ed had to leave school early because he was ill.*

In American English, these two words have more or less the same meaning – they refer to a feeling of being unwell, whatever the problem might be. On the other hand, in British English, they have more distinct meanings. **Sick** most commonly refers to feeling as if you are going to vomit, as in:

*I think I'm going to be sick.*

...while **ill** refers to any other feeling of being unwell. However, there are some phrases which are commonly used where **sick** has a more general meaning. For example:

*I've been off sick for ten days* – meaning I haven't been to work/school for ten days because I've been feeling unwell.

**fever** – *n* [count., uncount.] an illness in which you have a very high temperature (висока температура)

*have/run a fever*

*E.g. She's had a fever since last night. • Nick was ill with a high fever.*

**medicine** – *n* [count., uncount.] a substance for treating an illness, especially one that you drink (ліки)

**102° F (Fahrenheit)** corresponds to 38.9° C (Centigrade)

*E.g. Have you taken your medicine? • a medicine bottle • cough medicine*

**to bring down** – *phrasal verb* to reduce something to a lower level (зменшити)

*E.g.* Better farming methods have brought down the price of food.

**to overcome** – *v* [trans.] to succeed in controlling a feeling or solving a problem (перебороти)

*E.g.* I'm trying to overcome my fear of flying.

**germs** – *n* [countable usually plural] a very small living thing that can make you ill [= bacteria] (мікроби)

*E.g.* Sneezing spreads germs.

**influenza** – *n* a common disease which is like a bad cold but is more serious [= flu] (грип)

*E.g.* The whole team has got flu.

**pneumonia** [nju:ˈməʊniə] – *n* [uncount.] a serious disease of the lungs (пневмонія)

**detached** – *adj* not reacting to or involved in something in an emotional way (незалежний, незацікавлений)

*E.g.* Smith remained cold and detached throughout his trial.

**strangely** – *adv* unusually or surprisingly, in a way that is difficult to understand or explain (дивно)

*E.g.* She was looking at me very strangely.

**to bother** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to make the effort to do something (турбуватися)

*bother to do something*

*E.g.* He didn't bother to lock the door.

**light-headed** – *adj* unable to think clearly or move steadily, for example because you are ill or have drunk some alcohol (той, що не в змозі чітко та ясно думати)

**to take it easy** – to relax and not do very much (розслабитися, не хвилюватися):

*E.g.* You should take it easy for a few days.

**to gaze** – *v* [intrans.] to look at someone or something for a long time (пристально дивитися)

*gaze at/into etc*

*E.g.* She sat gazing out of the window.

**slack** – *adj* not taking enough care to do things correctly (слабкий, неактивний, ледачий)

*E.g.* I've been slack about getting this work done.

## EXERCISES

### I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:

1. ніби йому було боляче рухатися;
2. я поклав руку йому на лоб;

3. в капсулах різного кольору;
4. мікроби грипу;
5. у нього були темні кола під очима;
6. я краще не буду спати;
7. я бачив, що він не слухає;
8. ти не можеш жити з температурою 44 градуси;
9. розслабся, не хвилюйся;
10. я не можу не думати.

**II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:**

*refused, miserable, to die, thinking, setter, fever, opened, epidemic, took, relaxed.*

1. looking a very sick and \_\_\_\_\_ boy of nine years;
2. when the doctor came he \_\_\_\_\_ the boy's temperature;
3. this was a light \_\_\_\_\_ of flu;
4. the boy had \_\_\_\_\_ to let any one come into the room;
5. I took the young Irish \_\_\_\_\_ for a little walk;
6. I can't keep from \_\_\_\_\_;
7. I sat down and \_\_\_\_\_ the Pirate Book;
8. what time do you think I'm going \_\_\_\_\_;
9. people don't die with a \_\_\_\_\_ of one hundred and two;
10. his gaze at the foot of the bed \_\_\_\_\_ slowly.

**III. Fill in the correct prepositions:**

1. I put my hand \_\_\_\_\_ his forehead;
2. medicines \_\_\_\_\_ different colored capsules \_\_\_\_\_ instructions \_\_\_\_\_ giving them;
3. if the fever did not go \_\_\_\_\_ one hundred and four degrees;
4. I wrote the boy's temperature \_\_\_\_\_;
5. he seemed very detached \_\_\_\_\_ what was going \_\_\_\_\_;
6. I sat \_\_\_\_\_ the foot of the bed and read to myself;
7. \_\_\_\_\_ eleven o'clock I went \_\_\_\_\_ for a while;
8. he looked worried \_\_\_\_\_ something;
9. the boys told me you can't live \_\_\_\_\_ forty-four degrees;
10. he cried very easily \_\_\_\_\_ little things that were \_\_\_\_\_ no importance.

**IV. Fill in the necessary word:**

1. The toddler fell down and ..... himself.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
2. Are you .....?  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
3. Are you in .....?  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain

4. I didn't think my heart would ..... so much after we split up.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
5. Don't mention her weight or you'll ..... her feelings.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
6. I felt a sharp ..... in my side.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
7. When you've got the flu, you ..... all over.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
8. Luckily, nobody was badly .....  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
9. A little hard work never ..... anyone.  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain
10. Shut up, will you?! You're giving me a head.....  
A) ache      B) hurt      C) pain

**IV. Fill in *ache, hurt, pain, painful*:**

- What ... you?
- I can't say I feel any sharp ... in some definite place, I just ... all over.
- Does it ... you to move your arms, legs or head?
- My head ... all the time, it ... me to look at the light and each movement is ... .
- Well, I must examine you. Don't be afraid, it won't be ... .
- But doctor, each touch gives me... .
- Well, try and take it easy.

**V. Answer these questions:**

1. How did the boy behave after the doctor's visit?
2. What made the boy worry about his health?
3. What made the father think that the boy was light-headed?
4. When are people light-headed and how do they behave then?
5. Would you have left the sick boy in his father's place?
6. Wouldn't it have been more natural if the boy had told his father about his fears?
7. Would you tell your mother (father) about your troubles if you had any?
8. Do you like the boy's behaviour? How does it characterize him?
9. How would you explain the contrasts in the boy's behaviour on the first and the second day of his illness?
10. Do you find the situation described in the story true to life? (Give your reasons.)

**VI. Make up dialogues between:**

- The father and the doctor.
- The father and the mother.
- The father and the son.
- The boy and a friend of his (after the boy's recovery).

## V. *TOPIC*

### Visiting the Doctor

The problem of **health** always worried people. It has been in the center of attention of the scientists since ancient times. Perhaps, of all unpleasant things people hate **diseases** most of all.

If we caught **cold**, have a **splitting headache**, have a **clogged nose**, **cough**, are **running high temperature**, we must go to the polyclinic. First we come to the registry. The registry clerk on a duty asks our name, address, age and occupation. He writes out some slips because several specialists will examine us. Some of them will **listen to out heart and lungs**, some will **check up our kidneys, liver, stomach, eyesight, and hearing**. The others will make our **blood analysis, take our blood pressure and x-ray** us.

The first time you visit a new doctor, you should talk about your **medical history** – the illnesses you have had, any operations you have had and so on. Your doctor might want to give you a **check-up**. A check-up will include **monitoring your blood pressure**, as high blood pressure is serious and can lead to **life-threatening conditions**. Your doctor will probably also **take your pulse** to check that your **heart rate** is normal.

A doctor uses a **stethoscope** to listen to your breathing – particularly if you have a **heart or chest infection**, or a condition such as **asthma**.

Of course, you can also visit the doctor for a huge range of other reasons. Children need to have their **injections** and if you are going abroad on holiday, you might also need to have injections against **infectious diseases**. In winter, you can also get a flu **vaccine** so that you won't get the **flu**. If you need medication, a doctor will write you a **prescription** for some medicines: **pills, powder, drops, and mixture**. You can get your **prescription filled** at a chemist.

### 12 Tips to Avoid Cough and Cold

Cough and colds are commonly spread through bacteria or virus-infected droplets coughed or sneezed into the air. There are about 200 different types of cold viruses out there you can catch. Billions are spent each year on over-the-counter cough and cold medications. Adults get between two and five colds per year whereas children get approximately five to ten colds per year.

But you don't have to spend your precious time battling coughs, fevers and a runny nose. By following these tips, you can prevent this misery:

**Wash your hands:** Most cold and flu viruses are spread by direct contact. The most important thing you can do to prevent catching a cold or the flu is to wash your hands often with soap or an anti bacterial solution and warm water. Avoid rubbing your eyes or nose if you haven't done so.

**Drink plenty of fluids:** The human body uses liquids to filter out the body's accumulated wastes, resulting in a healthier system overall. If you have cold or cough try some orange juice. It is a rich source of vitamin C which strengthens the immune system.

**Stop smoking:** Stop smoking and avoid second-hand smoke. Smoke of cigarette irritates your throat thus aggravating the symptoms. Statistics also show that heavy smokers get more severe colds.

**Keep tissues handy:** Keep a supply of tissues ready to use when you are in a public place or in the vicinity of other people. Also, keep your distance from people who have a cold or who are showing the first signs of one. A cold is most contagious during its first three days.

**Take a Sauna:** When you take a sauna you inhale air hotter than 80 degrees. This temperature is too hot for cold and flu viruses to survive.

**Have spicy food:** Try eating hot chili peppers, green chilies or other spicy foods. They will help loosen mucus thus avoiding cough.

**Get plenty of rest:** Most of the diseases in the modern day world are caused by stress. Stress lowers your ability to ward off colds and the flu. It is very easy to take care of your health ahead of time by getting proper rest. A sound sleep of 7-8 hours goes a long way.

**Eat specific food:** Dark green leafy vegetables (like spinach and greens) and citrus fruits (like oranges and grapefruit) provides your body with the nutrients and vitamins it needs to help your body fight infections and boost your immune system. Some foods are very beneficial for cough. Raw onions are also useful in removing phlegm. The root of the turmeric (haldi) plant is useful in a dry cough. A cup of grape juice mixed with a teaspoon of honey is advised for cough relief. Garlic is an excellent remedy for whooping cough.

**Avoid sugar and junk food:** Your body is what you feed it. By loading up on junk food you are actually making it weak and susceptible to diseases. Have fresh fruits and vegetables so that your immune system is strong and prepared.

**Sleep well:** Getting plenty of sleep also helps boost the functioning of your immune system. While you are sleeping and your brain is having a rest, your body is using the time to recharge and fight off any infections.

**Go for Aromatherapy:** The principle of aromatherapy is you breathe in different scents. The use of inhaled steam can be very effective in liquefying mucus and reducing irritation. Inhaling essential oils can stimulate your lungs to expel phlegm.

**Get exercise:** Regular exercise strengthens the immune system. Moderate exercise, such as walking for thirty minutes will help you get fresh air in your system as well. Exercise can reduce your chances of getting colds by 50%.

While colds and the cough are contagious, a little bit of information and prevention tips can help you enjoy a healthy life to the fullest!

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Visiting the doctor	Diseases
<p><b>health</b> – здоров'я,  <b>cold</b> – застуда, <b>to catch a cold</b> – застудитися, <b>splitting headache</b> – сильний головний біль,  <b>clogged nose</b> – закладений ніс,  <b>cough</b> – кашель,  <b>to run high temperature</b> – мати високу температуру,  <b>to listen out heart and lungs</b> – послухати серце та легені,  <b>to check up our kidneys, liver, stomach, eyesight and hearing</b> – перевірити наші нирки, печінку, шлунок, зір і слух,  <b>blood analysis</b> – аналіз крові,  <b>to take our blood pressure</b> – поміряти тиск, <b>x-ray</b> – рентген,  <b>medical history</b> – історія хвороби,  <b>check-up</b> – перевірка,  <b>to monitor your blood pressure</b> – слідкувати за тиском,  <b>life-threatening conditions</b> – умови, що загрожують життю,  <b>to take your pulse</b> – виміряти пульс,  <b>heart rate</b> – частота серцебиття,  <b>heart or chest infection</b> – захворювання серця та грудної клітки  <b>injection</b> – ін'єкція, <b>vaccine</b> – вакцина, <b>pills</b> – пігулки, <b>powder</b> – порошок, <b>drops</b> – краплі,  <b>mixture</b> – мікстура,  <b>prescription</b> – рецепт,  <b>to get your prescription filled</b> – купити ліки за рецептом,  <b>a referral to a clinic</b> – направлення в клініку, <b>specialist</b> – спеціаліст,  <b>first aid station</b> – станція першої допомоги, <b>ambulance</b> – машина швидкої допомоги,</p>	<p><b>disease (malady, ailment, illness, sickness, disorder, health problem)</b> – хвороба, <b>allergy</b> – алергія,  <b>appendicitis</b> – апендицит,  <b>cholera</b> – холера, <b>diabetes</b> – діабет,  <b>scarlet fever</b> – скарлатина,  <b>sore (throat, eye, finger, etc.)</b> – хворе (горло, око, палець тощо)  <b>diphtheria</b> – дифтерія,  <b>indigestion</b> – розлад шлунку,  <b>typhoid fever</b> – тиф,  <b>insomnia</b> – безсоння,  <b>asthma</b> – астма, <b>measles</b> – кір,  <b>German measles</b> – краснуха,  <b>mumps</b> – свинка, <b>smallpox</b> – віспа,  <b>bronchitis</b> – бронхіт,  <b>malaria</b> – малярія,  <b>infectious diseases</b> – інфекційні хвороби, <b>flu</b> – грип, <b>scald</b> – опік (рідиною), <b>burn</b> – опік,  <b>sun-stroke</b> – сонячний удар,  <b>to have a runny nose</b> – мати сильний нежить, <b>quinsy</b> – ангіна,  <b>AIDS</b> – СНІД, <b>cancer</b> – рак,  <b>diarrhea</b> – діарея, <b>hiccups</b> – гикавка</p>
	<p>• <b>Hospital Departments</b></p>
	<p><b>Surgery</b> – хірургія,  <b>Cardiology</b> – кардіологія,  <b>Therapy</b> – терапія,  <b>Urology (kidneys)</b> – урологія,  <b>Gynecology</b> – гінекологія,  <b>Pediatrics</b> – педіатрія,  <b>Otolaryngology (ears, nose, throat)</b> – отоларингологія,  <b>Neurology</b> – неврологія,  <b>Psychiatry</b> – психіатрія,  <b>Department of infectious diseases</b> – інфекційне відділення</p>



<p><b>reception ward</b> – прийомна палата,  <b>to treat (smb. for a disease)</b> – лікувати (когось від хвороби), <b>treatment (for smth.)</b> – лікування від чогось,  <b>to cure</b> – виліковувати,  <b>to discharge</b> – виписувати,  <b>to recover (from a disease)</b> – видужати (від хвороби),  <b>attack (of smth.)</b> – напад (чогось),  <b>case (of a disease)</b> – випадок (хвороби)</p>	<p>• <b>Doctors</b></p> <p><b>physician</b> – терапевт,  <b>surgeon</b> – хірург,  <b>children's doctor</b> – дитячий лікар,  <b>dentist</b> – стоматолог,  <b>oculist</b> – окуліст,  <b>ear, nose and throat specialist</b> – отоларинголог,  <b>dermatologist</b> – дерматолог</p>
--	---

*Some useful phrases:*

<b>Asking about health</b>	
<p>How do you feel? / How are you feeling?  I don't feel well. I must be getting a cold.  Not so good. I've got the flu.  I'm feeling much better today, thank you.  I feel fine, thank you. / Pretty good, thank you.  You don't look well. Are you sick?  You look ill. You should see a doctor.</p>	<p>Як ви себе почуваєте?  Я погано себе почуваю. Здається, у мене починається застуда.  Не дуже добре. У мене грип.  Я почуваю себе набагато краще сьогодні, дякую.  Я почуваю себе добре, дякую. / Досить добре, дякую.  Ви погано виглядаєте. Ви хворі?  Ви виглядаєте хворим. Вам слід піти до лікаря.</p>
<b>At the doctor's office</b>	
<p>What is the problem? / What seems to be the problem? / What is the trouble?  I've got a terrible toothache.  I have a sharp pain in my ear.  I fell down and hurt my elbow.  I sprained my ankle.  I have a sore throat and a runny nose, and I'm sneezing a lot.  I have a bad cough and my chest hurts.  I've got a fever and a headache, and I feel dizzy and weak.</p>	<p>Що вас хвилює?  В мене жахливий зубний біль.  В мене гострий біль у вусі.  Я впав і вдарив лікоть.  Я підвернув ногу.  В мене болить горло, нежить, і я дуже багато чхаю.  В мене сильний кашель і болить в грудях.  В мене температура і головний біль, і я відчуваю головокружіння і слабкість.</p>

How long have you been feeling like this?

We'll take an X-ray of your foot.

Are you allergic to any medication? / Do you have an allergic reaction to any medication? / Do you have drug allergies?

Stay in bed for a couple of days. Drink plenty of fluids and keep warm.

Як довго ви себе так почуваете?

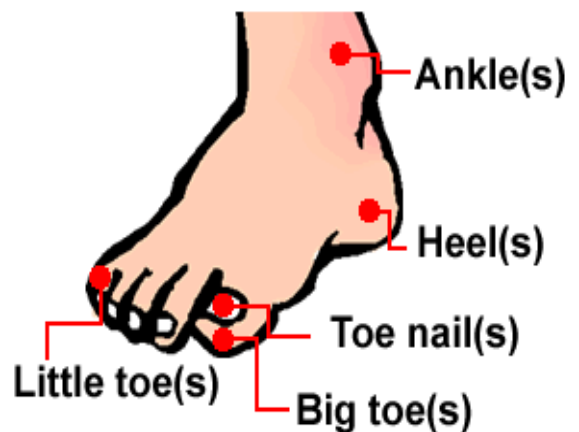
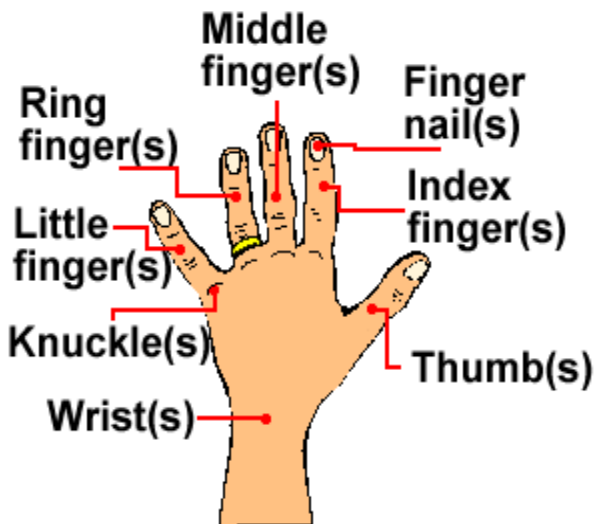
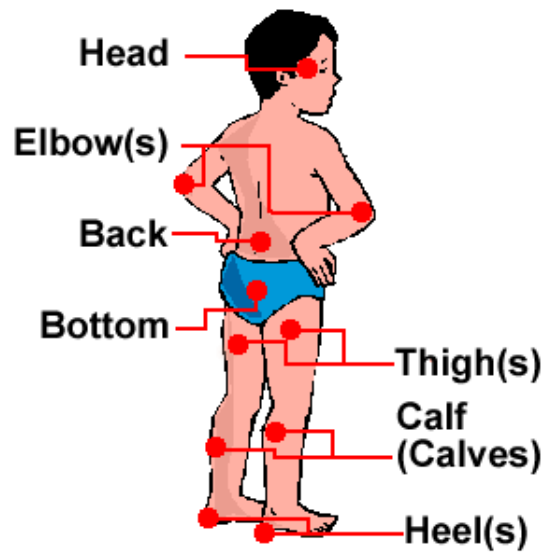
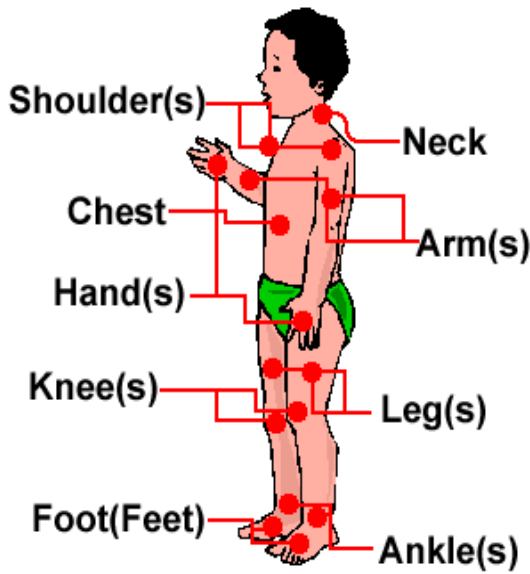
Ми зробимо рентген ступні.

Чи є у вас алергія на якісь ліки?

Вам потрібно полежати декілька днів.

Пийте багато рідини і будьте в теплі.

### Parts of the Human Body



## DIALOGUES

1)

It's Monday morning and Mr Smith has gone to see the doctor.

*Doctor:* Hello Mr Smith. We haven't seen you in a while. What seems to be the problem?

*Mr Smith:* Well, I fell off the ladder whilst I was decorating and hurt my ankle. It swelled up and hasn't gone down since.

*Doctor:* OK - let's have a look, take off your shoe and sock and roll up your trouser leg. (*Examines ankle*)

Ah yes, I think we had better send you to the hospital to get this X-rayed. You may have broken a bone.

*Mr Smith:* What? You're joking! No wonder it hurts so much.

2)

*Doctor:* Good morning. Please have a seat here. What's the problem?

*Paul Ryefield:* I have a terrible stomachache.

*Doctor:* Do you have diarrhea?

*Paul Ryefield:* Yes, I do.

*Doctor:* Do you have any other symptoms?

*Paul Ryefield:* Yes, I feel sick.

*Doctor:* You mean you feel nauseous?

*Paul Ryefield:* That's right. I feel like vomiting. And right now I feel dizzy, too.

*Doctor:* When did the symptoms start?

*Paul Ryefield:* This morning. Yesterday evening I ate something raw.

*Doctor:* All right. Please take off your clothes to the waist and lie down there. ... Just tell me if it hurts when I do this.

*Paul Ryefield:* It doesn't hurt. ... Ouch. It hurts there.

*Doctor:* Okay. Let's hope it's just indigestion, but we'll need to run some diagnostic tests to be sure. We'll run a blood test and we'll also need a urine sample.

*Paul Ryefield:* Can you give me something for the time being?

*Doctor:* Yes, I'll give you a prescription for indigestion tablets.

3)

*Doctor:* Good afternoon. How can I help you today?

*Patient:* My son doesn't feel very well.

*Doctor:* That's too bad. What symptoms does he have?

*Patient:* He has an earache and a fever.

*Doctor:* Sit on the table please, young man, so I can look in your ear. (*pause*)  
He has an ear infection.

*Patient:* What do I need to do?

*Doctor:* You need to put drops in his ear twice a day. Here is a prescription.

*Patient:* Now maybe we can get some sleep again! Thank you, doctor.

*Doctor:* You're welcome.

#### **4) A Visit to the Doctor**

– Well, what's the matter with you, Mr Walker?

– You'd better ask me what is not the matter with me, doctor. I seem to be suffering from all the illnesses imaginable: insomnia, headaches, backache, indigestion, constipation and pains in the stomach. To make things still worse, I've caught a cold, I've got a sore throat, and I'm constantly sneezing and coughing. To crown it all, I had an accident the other day, hurt my right shoulder, leg and knee, and nearly broke my neck. If I take a long walk, I get short of breath. In fact I feel more dead than alive.

– I'm sorry to hear that. Anyhow, I hope things aren't as bad as you imagine. Let me examine you. Your heart, chest and lungs seem to be all right. Now open your mouth and show me your tongue. Now breathe in deeply, through the nose...There doesn't seem to be anything radically wrong with you, but it's quite clear that you're run down, and if you don't take care of yourself, you may have a nervous break-down and have to go to hospital. I advise you, first of all, to stop worrying. Take a long rest, have regular meals, keep to a diet of salads and fruit, and very little meat. Keep off alcohol. If possible, give up smoking, at least for a time. Have this tonic made up and take two tablespoonfuls three times a day before meals. If you do this, I can promise you full recovery within two or three months.

– And if I don't, doctor?

– Then you'd better make your will, if you haven't yet done so!

– I see. Well, thank you, doctor. I shall have to think it over and decide which is the lesser evil: to follow your advice or prepare for a better world.

### *EXERCISES*

#### **1. Answer the questions:**

1. What does it mean to be healthy?
2. When have you felt happy to be in good health?
3. Do you worry about anyone's health?
4. What do you do to stay healthy?
5. What do you do when you catch a cold? have a headache?
6. Do you take medicine soon when you don't feel well?
7. Are there any medicines that you always carry around with you?
8. Do you know how medicines work?
9. Do you ever have trouble swallowing medicine?
10. Are all medicines safe?
11. When was your last physical exam? visit to a doctor?
12. When was the last time you were sick? went to a hospital?

## 2. Correct the following statements:

1. Sick people never stay in bed while they are ill.
2. It is not dangerous to take care of a person who has got a catching disease.
3. People often feel sick and giddy when they are quite well.
4. We seldom sneeze and cough when we have a cold.
5. You never have a sore throat when you have quinsy.
6. She doesn't feel any pain in her heart when she has a heart attack.
7. Probably you could consult a dentist when you have a stomach-ache.
8. Old people never complain of any ailments.
9. It was a surgeon who prescribed you these glasses.
10. You go to the chemist's to buy the food.

## 3. Fill in the necessary articles:

... flu usually begins abruptly, with ... fever between 102 and 106 °F. (An adult typically has ... lower fever than ... child.) ... fever usually lasts for ... day or two, but can last 5 days.

Other common symptoms include: body aches, chills, dizziness, flushed face, headache, lack of energy, vomiting.

Somewhere between day 2 and day 4 of ... illness, the "whole body" symptoms begin to subside, and respiratory symptoms begin to increase.

... most prominent of ... respiratory symptoms is usually ... dry cough. Most people also develop ... sore throat and headache. Runny nose and sneezing are common.

These symptoms (except ... cough) usually disappear within 4 - 7 days. Sometimes, ... fever returns. The cough and tiredness usually last for weeks after the rest of ... illness is over.

## 4. Match the parts of the sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1) Health is ...   | a) ... hospitals in Ukraine.  |
| 2) Everybody will probably agree ...                                       | b) ... on the basis of the state ones.  |
| 3) If you are healthy, you can do ...                                      | c) ... Wealth.  |
| 4) If your loved ones are healthy, ...                                     | d) ... work part time at the state ones as well.  |
| 5) There are state and private ...   | e) ... if you've got a severe toothache and need an immediate treatment you'd be able to get in without a previous appointment. |
| 6) Very often private hospitals are open ...                               | f) ... that one of the biggest treasures we have in this life is health.  |
| 7) Sometimes they could even use the medical equipment and facilities .... | g) ... lots of things, for others and for yourself.   |
| 8) As a rule, doctors from the smaller private hospitals ...               | h) ... in advance and make an appointment.  |
| 9) Usually, there are no lines at the private hospitals and ...            |   |
| 10) But anyway it's better to give them a call ...                         |   |

11) If you need to visit a dentist, it's better to make an appointment beforehand, but... | i) ... you are doubly happy.  
 | j) ... you can get everything you need on the spot: to consult the specialists or do necessary tests.  
 | k) ... of the state hospitals.

**5. Match each sentence or word in the left-hand column with the best meaning in the right-hand column:**

1. bandage	a) to be confined to bed or the house through illness
2. hospital	b) to examine a patient (thoroughly)
3. to be laid up with the flu (cold, sore throat etc.)	c) a pain in the tooth or teeth
4. ointment	d) the art and science of the prevention and cure of disease
5. medicine	e) sort of medicinal paste made from oil or fat and used on the skin
6. surgeon	f) strip of material for binding round a wound or injury
7. cough	g) condition of the body or the mind
8. toothache	h) continuous pain in the head
9. to give a patient a (thorough) check up	i) a place where people are treated for, nursed through their illness or injuries
10. headache	j) act or sound of coughing
11. health	k) a doctor who performs operations

**6. Rewrite each of these sentences in the past. Make all the other necessary changes:**

1. The doctor says there is nothing to worry about if the fever doesn't go above 38,5°. He doesn't think there is any danger if pneumonia is avoided. 2. They say the boy has refused to let any one come into the room as he doesn't want them to catch what he has. 3. The boy has been waiting to die all day since nine o'clock in the morning. 4. He wouldn't worry about his temperature if someone explained to him the difference between the Fahrenheit and the Centigrade thermometers. 5. I think (that) it would be natural for the boy to listen to his father's reading if he didn't feel so bad. 6. The likeness between the brothers is so great that even their mother can't tell one from the other.

**7. Fill in the necessary words:**

*rest, unfit, air, suffers, order, to make much progress, vitamins, health, body, exercises.*

One of our first duties is to keep our body in perfect \_\_\_\_\_(1). If our body \_\_\_\_\_ (2) from any disorder, our mind suffers from it too and we are unable \_\_\_\_\_ (3) in our studies, we are \_\_\_\_\_ (4) to perform our duties.

There are certain laws of keeping \_\_\_\_\_ (5) which are so simple that even a little child can learn them. Fresh \_\_\_\_\_ (6) is very important to good health, perfect cleanliness is also essential. Every room in the house, especially bedroom should be properly cleaned. The whole \_\_\_\_\_ (7) should be washed regularly. We like to look at someone who is tidy and clean. Certain \_\_\_\_\_ (8) are also necessary to keep fit. The old and the young should do morning exercises. \_\_\_\_\_ (9) is also important to the health of both body and mind. Plenty of food rich in \_\_\_\_\_ (10) is indispensable for our health, too.

### 8. Fill in the necessary information:

Disease	Cause	Treatment
1) a broken arm	a fall during a football match	set the arm and put it in plaster
2) a burn		
3) sun-stroke		
4) a black eye		
5) sore throat		
6) runny nose		

### 9. Read and translate the text into Ukrainian:

#### *What is AIDS?*

**AIDS** stands for: **A**cquired **I**mmune **D**eficiency **S**ndrome

AIDS is a medical condition. A person is diagnosed with AIDS when their immune system is too weak to fight off infections.

Since AIDS was first identified in the early 1980s, an unprecedented number of people have been affected by the global AIDS epidemic. Today, there are an estimated 33.3 million people living with HIV and AIDS worldwide.

#### *What causes AIDS?*

AIDS is caused by HIV.

HIV is a virus that gradually attacks immune system cells. As HIV progressively damages these cells, the body becomes more vulnerable to infections, which it will have difficulty in fighting off. It is at the point of very advanced HIV infection that a person is said to have AIDS. It can be years before HIV has damaged the immune system enough for AIDS to develop.

#### *What are the symptoms of AIDS?*

A person is diagnosed with AIDS when they have developed an AIDS related condition or symptom, called an opportunistic infection, or an AIDS related cancer. The infections are called 'opportunistic' because they take advantage of the opportunity offered by a weakened immune system.

It is possible for someone to be diagnosed with AIDS even if they have not developed an opportunistic infection. AIDS can be diagnosed when the number of immune system cells (CD4 cells) in the blood of an HIV positive person drops below a certain level.

***Is there a cure for AIDS?***

Worryingly, many people think there is a 'cure' for AIDS - which makes them feel safer, and perhaps take risks that they otherwise wouldn't. However, there is still no cure for AIDS. The only way to stay safe is to be aware of how HIV is transmitted and how to prevent HIV infection.

***How many people have died from AIDS?***

Since the first cases of AIDS were identified in 1981, more than 25 million people have died from AIDS. An estimated 1.8 million people died as a result of AIDS in 2009 alone.

Although there is no cure for AIDS, HIV infection can be prevented, and those living with HIV can take antiretroviral drugs to delay the onset of AIDS. However, in many countries across the world access to prevention and treatment services is limited. Global leaders have pledged to work towards universal access to HIV prevention and care, so that millions of deaths can be averted.

**10. Complete the dialogues:**

Patient: Good afternoon.

Doctor: Good afternoon. Have a seat. So, what \_\_\_\_\_?

Patient: Thank you. I'm feeling ill, I've got quite a bad cough, but \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: I see. How long have you had these symptoms?

Patient: Oh, I've had \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: Are you having any other problems?

Patient: Well, I've got \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: Do you smoke?

Patient: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: How about allergies? Do you have any allergies?

Patient: \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: Does your head feel stuffy?

Patient: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

Doctor: OK. Now let's have a look. Could you please open your mouth and say 'ah'?

\* \* \*

*Dr. Barnes:* Good morning, Mr. Perez. How \_\_\_\_\_?

*Mr. Perez:* I have a bad sore throat.

*Dr. Barnes:* When did it start?

*Mr. Perez:* \_\_\_\_\_.

*Dr. Barnes:* Do you have any other symptoms?

*Mr. Perez:* I have \_\_\_\_\_.

*Dr. Barnes:* Okay. I'll have a look at your throat. I'm going to give you a prescription for an antibiotic.

*Mr. Perez:* How often \_\_\_\_\_?



*Dr. Barnes:* Take a pill \_\_\_\_\_. You'll probably start to feel better \_\_\_\_\_.

*Mr. Perez:* Thank you, Doctor Barnes.

**11. Here is a list of controversial statements about medical care. For each one discuss advantages and disadvantages:**

1. The State should pay for all medical care. There should be no private medical care.

2. Heart transplantants should be stopped. They are rarely successful, and the money could be better spent on other things.

3. The tax on cigarettes should be increased to pay for the health care needed by smokers.

4. People who are very ill should have the right to decide if they want to die.

5. Doctors should always give patients all the information about their illnesses and chances of recovery.

**12. Make up a dialogue on one of the following topics:**

1) At the health centre.

2) At the doctor's.

3) At the chemist's.

4) At the bedside of a sick child.

5) A talk between two young doctors after their first day at a hospital.

6) A talk between the mother and her son who pretends to be ill.

**13. Translate into English:**

1. Вам краще звернутися до лікаря.

2. Лікар виміряв мій пульс, послухав серце і легені та поміряв температуру.

3. Вона не може розмовляти, в неї дуже болить горло.

4. Я вся тремчу. Напевно, я застудилася.

5. Ось рецепт. Приймайте по столовій ложці мікстури тричі на день після їжі.

6. У вас два хворих зуба. Вам потрібно звернутися до стоматолога.

7. В мене болить горло, нежить, і я дуже багато чхаю.

8. В мене температура і головний біль, я відчуваю головокружіння і слабкість.

9. Чому ти ходиш в таку погоду без шапки? Ти ж недавно хворів, у тебе можуть бути ускладнення.

10. Дитина хвора на скарлатину. Їй доведеться 10 днів полежати в ліжку.

11. Дотримуйтесь дієти, адже у вас проблеми зі шлунком.

12. Чи є у вас алергія на якісь ліки?

13. Обіцяю вам повне видужання протягом трьох місяців.

14. Я страждаю від безсоння.

15. При повторному приступі апендициту вам доведеться лягти в лікарню.

### III. GRAMMAR

#### 1) Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The **Present Perfect Continuous Tense** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Present Indefinite Tense (*has* in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular), Participle II of the verb *to be* (*been*) and *-ing-form* of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I	<b>Have</b> I	I
We } <b>have</b>	We	We } <b>have not (haven't)</b>
You	They	You
They	You	They
He		He
She } <b>has</b>	He	She } <b>has not (hasn't)</b>
It	<b>Has</b> She	It
	It	

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. There is a connection with *now*:

- You're out of breath. **Have you been running?** (= you're out of breath *now*)
- Paul is very tired. He's **been working** very hard. (= he's tired *now*)
- Why are your clothes so dirty? What **have you been doing?**
- I've **been talking** to Amanda about the problem and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I've **been looking** for you everywhere.

It has been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:



It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it **been raining?**

It has **been raining** for two hours.

We use the present perfect continuous in this way with **how long**, **for ...** and **since ...**. The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- How long have you been learning** English? (= you're still learning English)
- Tim is still watching television. He's **been watching** television all day.
- Where have you been? I've **been looking** for you for the last half hour.
- Chris **hasn't been feeling** well recently.

You can use the present perfect continuous for actions repeated over a period of time:

- Debbie is a very good tennis player. She's **been playing** since she was eight.
- Every morning they meet in the same café. They've **been going** there for years.

**Exercises:**

**I. Use the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous Tense:**

1. Judy: How long (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada?  
Claude: I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ here for more than three years.
2. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ the same car for more than ten years. I'm thinking about buying a new one.
3. I (love) \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate since I was a child. You might even call me a "chocoholic."
4. Matt and Sarah (have) \_\_\_\_\_ some difficulties in their relationship lately, so they (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to a marriage counselor. I hope they work everything out.
5. John (work) \_\_\_\_\_ for the government since he graduated from Harvard University. Until recently, he (enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ his work, but now he is talking about retiring.
6. Lately, I (think) \_\_\_\_\_ about changing my career because I (become) \_\_\_\_\_ dissatisfied with the conditions at my company.
7. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ Judy for more than five years and during that time I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ many changes in her personality.

**II. Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary:**

1. Bob is a friend of mine. I know him very well.
2. Bob is a friend of mine. I know him for a long time.
3. Sue and Alan are married since July.
4. The weather is awful. It's raining again.
5. The weather is awful. It's raining all day.
6. I like your house. How long are you living there.
7. Gary is working in a shop for the last few months.
8. I don't know Tim well. We've only met a few times.
9. I gave up drinking coffee. I don't drink it for a year.
10. That's a very old bike. How long do you have it?

**III. Use the verbs in brackets in the Present Continuous or Present Perfect Continuous Tense:**

1. It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ all week. I hope it stops by Saturday because I want to go to the beach.
2. Sid: Where is Gary?  
Sarah: He (study, at the library) \_\_\_\_\_ for his German test on Wednesday. In fact, he (review) \_\_\_\_\_ for the test every day for the last week.

3. You look really great! (You, exercise) \_\_\_\_\_ at the fitness center ?
4. Frank, where have you been? We (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you since 1 PM.
5. Tim: What is that sound?  
Nancy: A car alarm (ring) \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere down the street. It (drive) me crazy - I wish it would stop! It (ring) \_\_\_\_\_ for more than twenty minutes.
6. Joseph's English (improve, really) \_\_\_\_\_, isn't it? He (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ American television programs and (study) his grammar every day since he first arrived in San Diego. Soon he will be totally fluent.
7. Dan: You look a little tired. (You, get) \_\_\_\_\_ enough sleep lately?  
Michelle: Yes, I (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ relatively well. I just look tired because I (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ a little sick for the last week.  
Dan: I hope you feel better soon.  
Michelle: Thanks. I (take, currently) \_\_\_\_\_ some medicine, so I should feel better in a couple of days.

#### IV.

Complete B's answers to A's questions.

A	B
1 Bill is in hospital, isn't he?	Yes, he <u>has been</u> in hospital since Monday.
2 Do you see Ann very often?	No, I <u>haven't seen</u> her for three months.
3 Is Margaret married?	Yes, she ..... married for ten years.
4 Are you waiting for me?	Yes, I ..... for the last half hour.
5 You know Linda, don't you?	Yes, we ..... each other a long time.
6 Do you still play tennis?	No, I ..... tennis for years.
7 Is Jim watching TV?	Yes, he ..... TV all evening.
8 Do you watch TV a lot?	No, I ..... TV for ages.
9 Have you got a headache?	Yes, I ..... a headache all morning.
10 George is never ill, is he?	No, he ..... ill since I've known him.
11 Are you feeling ill?	Yes, I ..... ill all day.
12 Sue lives in London, doesn't she?	Yes, she ..... in London for the last few years.
13 Do you go to the cinema a lot?	No, I ..... to the cinema for ages.
14 Would you like to go to New York one day?	Yes, I ..... to go to New York. (use always / want)

## 2) Past Perfect Continuous Tense

The **Past Perfect Continuous Tense** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Past Indefinite Tense (*had*) Participle II of the verb *to be (been)* and *-ing-form* of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I We You The } <b>had</b> } been reading He She It	<b>Had</b> I We They You } been reading He She It	I We You They } <b>had not (hadn't)</b> been reading He She It

Study this example situation:

*yesterday morning*



Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It **had been** raining.

It was *not* raining when I looked out of the window; the sun was shining. But it **had been** raining before.

Had been -ing is the *past perfect continuous*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	had	(= I'd etc.) (= he'd etc.)	been	doing working playing etc.
----------------------------	-----	-------------------------------	------	----------------------------------

### *Exercises:*

#### **I. Put the verbs into the Past Perfect Continuous form:**

1. We (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ for 12 hours when he woke us up.
2. They (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally arrived.
3. We (look for) \_\_\_\_\_ her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.
4. I (not / walk) \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time, when it suddenly began to rain.
5. How long (learn / she) \_\_\_\_\_ English before she went to London?
6. Frank Sinatra caught the flu because he (sing) \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain too long.
7. He (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.

8. They were very tired in the evening because they (help) \_\_\_\_\_ on the farm all day.
9. I (not / work) \_\_\_\_\_ all day; so I wasn't tired and went to the disco at night.
10. They (cycle) \_\_\_\_\_ all day so their legs were sore in the evening.

**II. Use the verbs in brackets in the Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous Tense:**

I'm sorry I left without you last night, but I told you to meet me early because the show started at 8:00. I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to get tickets for that play for months, and I didn't want to miss it. By the time I finally left the coffee shop where we were supposed to meet, I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ five cups of coffee and I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ over an hour. I had to leave because I (arrange) \_\_\_\_\_ to meet Kathy in front of the theater.

When I arrived at the theater, Kathy (pick, already) \_\_\_\_\_ up the tickets and she was waiting for us near the entrance. She was really angry because she (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for more than half an hour. She said she (give, almost) \_\_\_\_\_ up and (go) \_\_\_\_\_ into the theater without us.

Kathy told me you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ late several times in the past and that she would not make plans with you again in the future. She mentioned that she (miss) \_\_\_\_\_ several movies because of your late arrivals. I think you owe her an apology. And in the future, I suggest you be on time!

**III. Put the verb into the most suitable form: Past Continuous, Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous:**

1. It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) a party.
2. We were good friends. We \_\_\_\_\_ (to know) each other for years.
3. John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because he \_\_\_\_\_ (to walk) very fast.
4. Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She \_\_\_\_\_ (to run).
5. Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor. He \_\_\_\_\_ (to look) for his contact lens.
6. When I arrived Kate \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for me. She was annoyed with me because I was late and she \_\_\_\_\_ (to wait) for a long time.
7. I was sad when I sold my car. I \_\_\_\_\_ (to have) it for a very long time.

**IV. Use the verbs in brackets in the necessary tense form:**

1. It is already 9:30 PM and I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ here for over an hour. If John does not get here in the next five minutes, I am going to leave.

2. I was really angry at John yesterday. By the time he finally arrived, I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for over an hour. I almost left without him.

3. Did you hear that Ben was fired last month? He (work) \_\_\_\_\_ for that import company for more than ten years and he (work) \_\_\_\_\_ in almost every department. Nobody knew the company like he did.

4. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ many pictures of the pyramids before I went to Egypt. Pictures of the monuments are very misleading. The pyramids are actually quite small.

5. Sarah (climb) \_\_\_\_\_ the Matterhorn, (sail) \_\_\_\_\_ around the world, and (go) \_\_\_\_\_ on safari in Kenya. She is such an adventurous person.

6. Sarah (climb) \_\_\_\_\_ the Matterhorn, (sail) \_\_\_\_\_ around the world and (go) \_\_\_\_\_ on safari in Kenya by the time she turned twenty-five. She (experience) \_\_\_\_\_ more by that age than most people do in their entire lives.

7. When Melanie came into the office yesterday, her eyes were red and watery. I think she (cry) \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3) Future Perfect Continuous Tense

The **Future Perfect Continuous Tense** is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to have* in the Future Indefinite Tense (*will have*) Participle II of the verb *to be (been)* and *-ing-form* of the notional verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I	<b>Will</b> I	I
We	We	We
You	They	You
They } <b>will have</b>	You } <b>have</b>	They } <b>will not (won't) have</b>
} been reading	} been reading	} been reading
He	He	He
She	She	She
It	It	It

The **Future Perfect Continuous Tense** is seldom used in Modern English. The Future Perfect is used instead.

e.g. By this time next year our teacher will have taught at our University for 25 years.

## VI. WRITING

Write an essay on one of the following topics:

1. My Last Being Ill.

2. At the Dentist's.

3. Pros and Cons of Vaccination.

## UNIT 6

### SPORTS & GAMES

#### I. TEXT

##### A Friend In Need

"It's rather a funny story," he said. "He wasn't a bad **chap**. I liked him. He was always well-dressed and he was handsome in a way, with curly hair and pink-and-white cheeks. Women thought a lot of him. There was no **harm** in him, you know, he was only wild. Of course he drank too much. Fellows like him always do. A bit of money used to come in for him once a quarter and he made a bit more by card-playing. He won a **good deal** of mine, I know that."

Burton gave a kindly little chuckle.

"I suppose that is why he came to me when he went broke, that and the fact that he was a **namesake** of mine. He came to see me in my office one day and asked me for a job. I was rather surprised. He told me that there was no more money coming from home and he wanted to work. I asked him how old he was.

"Thirty five,' he said.

"And what have you been doing before?' I asked him.

"Well, nothing very much,' he said.

"**I couldn't help laughing.**

"I'm afraid I can't do anything for you just now,' I said. 'Come back and see me in another thirty-five years, and I'll see what I can do.'

"He didn't move. He went rather pale. He **hesitated** for a moment and then he told me that he had had bad luck at cards for some time. He hadn't a penny. He'd **pawned** everything he had. He couldn't pay his hotel bill and they wouldn't give him any more credit. He **was down and out**. If he couldn't get a job he'd have to **commit suicide**.

"I looked at him for a bit. I could see now that he **was all to pieces**. He'd been drinking more than usual and he looked fifty.

"Well, isn't there anything you can do except play cards?' I asked him.

"I can swim,' he said.

"Swim!"

"I could hardly believe my ears; it seemed such a silly answer.

"I swam for my university.'

"I was a pretty good swimmer myself when I was a young man,' I said.

"Suddenly I had an idea.

Pausing in his story, Burton turned to me.

"Do you know Kobe?" he asked.

"No," I said, "I passed through it once, but I only spent a night there."



"Then you don't know the Shioya Club. When I was a young man I swam from there round the beacon and landed at the **creek** of Tarumi. It's over three miles and it's rather difficult on account of the currents round the beacon. Well, I told my young namesake about it and I said to him that if he'd do it I'd give him a job.

"I could see he was rather **taken aback**.

"'You say you're a swimmer,' I said.

"'I'm not in very good condition,' he answered.

"I didn't say anything. I **shrugged** my shoulders. He looked at me for a moment and then he nodded.

"'All right,' he said. 'When do you want me to do it?'

"I looked at my watch. It was just after ten.

"The swim shouldn't take you much over an hour and a quarter. I'll drive round to the creek at half-past twelve and meet you. I'll take you back to the club to dress and then we'll have lunch together.'

"'Done,' he said.

"We shook hands. I wished him good luck and he left me. I had a lot of work to do that morning and I only just managed to get to the creek at half past twelve. I waited for him there, but **in vain**."

"Did he get **frightened** at the last moment?" I asked.

"'No, he didn't. He started swimming. But of course he'd ruined his health by drink. The currents round the beacon were more than he could manage.' We didn't get the body for about three days."

I didn't say anything for a moment or two. I was a little shocked. Then I asked Burton a question.

"When you offered him the job, did you know that he'd **be drowned**?"

He gave a little mild chuckle and he looked at me with those kind blue eyes of his. He rubbed his chin with his hand.

"Well, I hadn't got a **vacancy** in my office at the moment."

(by William Somerset Maugham)

## Vocabulary Notes

**chap** – *n* [count.] *informal* a man (хлопец)

*Synonyms:*

*guy /chap /bloke*

*gentleman* - a polite word for a man, often used in formal situations

*boy* - a young male person, usually a child or a teenager

*lad (old-fashioned)* - a boy or young man

*youth* - a teenage boy or young man, used especially in news reports: • The gang of youths terrorised the local community.

**harm** – *n* [uncount.] 1. damage, hurt, or injury (школа)

*E.g.* We must protect our children from harm.

I don't think a little wine does you any harm.

2. *there's no harm in doing something* used to suggest that it might be useful to do something:

*E.g.* There's no harm in asking.

**a great/good deal** – a large quantity of something [= a lot] (велика кількість)

*E.g.* I spend a great deal of time abroad.

**namesake** – *n* [count.] someone who has the same name as someone else (тезка)

**couldn't help laughing** (не міг не сміятися)

*somebody can't help (doing) something* used to say that someone cannot stop doing or feeling something

*E.g.* 'Stop biting your nails.' 'I can't help it.'

**to hesitate** – *v* [intrans.] 1. to pause before doing or saying something because you are nervous or not sure (вагатися)

*E.g.* She hesitated before answering. hesitate over/about

He hesitated over whether to follow her.

2. **don't hesitate to do something** used to encourage someone to do something and not worry about offending anyone

*E.g.* Don't hesitate to call if you need any help.

**to pawn** – *v* [trans.] to leave something valuable with a pawnbroker in order to borrow money from them (залишити у заставу)

*E.g.* She pawned her wedding ring.

**down and out** – *n* [count.] someone who has no home, job, or money (людина, розбита морально і фізично)

**to commit suicide** – kill yourself deliberately (вчинити самогубство)

**creek** – *n* [count.] a narrow area of water where the sea flows into the land (бухта)

**to be taken aback** – to be very surprised or shocked (бути шокованим)

*E.g.* I was taken aback by Linda's rudeness.

**to shrug** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to raise and lower your shoulders to show that you do not know or care about something (знизити плечима)

*E.g.* Dan shrugged and returned to his book.

Melanie shrugged her shoulders

**in vain** – without success (дарма)

*E.g.* Doctors tried in vain to save his life.

**frightened** – *adj* feeling afraid (наляканий)

*E.g.* Don't be frightened. I won't hurt you.

*frightened of*

*E.g.* Are you frightened of the dark?

**to drown** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to die by being under water for too long, or to kill someone in this way (втопитися)

*E.g.* The boys almost drowned in the river.

Hundreds of people were drowned when the ferry sank.

He saved his brother from drowning.

**vacancy** – *n* [count.] a job that is available for someone to start doing  
(вакантна посада)

*E.g.* information about job vacancies.

### **Pay Attention!**

*Synonyms:*

**vacant/ free/ not engaged/ spare/ loose** – вільний

**vacant** means “not occupied” as *a vacant seat (room, house, flat); a vacant post (position);*

**free** means “independent” as *a free person; a free state, free will;*

**not engaged** means “not occupied, not busy”, e.g. You are not engaged now, are you?

**spare** means “additional to what is usually needed”, e.g. I have spare time today.

**loose** means “not tight or not fitting close”, e.g. He had loose clothes on.

## **EXERCISES**

### **I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:**

1. добре одягнений;
2. жінкам він дуже подобався;
3. спокійно ставитися до програшу;
4. ось чому він прийшов до мене;
5. покінчити життя самогубством;
6. він був розбитий фізично і морально;
7. на що він натякає;
8. я знизив плечима;
9. він так і не з'явився;
10. він злякався в останню хвилину.

### **II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:**

*silly, credit, health, cards, broke, vacancy, good luck, bill, all to pieces, condition.*

1. he came to me when he went \_\_\_\_\_;
2. he had had bad luck at \_\_\_\_\_ for some time;
3. He couldn't pay his hotel \_\_\_\_\_;
4. they wouldn't give him any more \_\_\_\_\_;
5. I could see now that he was \_\_\_\_\_;
6. it seemed such a \_\_\_\_\_ answer;
7. I'm not in very good \_\_\_\_\_;
8. I wished him \_\_\_\_\_ and he left me;
9. he'd ruined his \_\_\_\_\_ by drink;
10. I hadn't got a \_\_\_\_\_ in my office at the moment.

### **III. Fill in the correct prepositions:**

1. handsome \_\_\_\_\_ a way;

2. there was no harm \_\_\_\_\_ him;
3. a bit \_\_\_\_\_ money used to come \_\_\_\_\_ him;
4. he came to see me \_\_\_\_\_ my office one day and asked me \_\_\_\_\_ a job;
5. there was no more money coming \_\_\_\_\_ home;
6. he hesitated \_\_\_\_\_ a moment;
7. I swam \_\_\_\_\_ my university;
8. I swam \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ the beacon and landed \_\_\_\_\_ the creek;
9. he looked \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a moment;
10. he'd ruined his health \_\_\_\_\_ drink.

#### **IV. Fill in *vacant, free or spare*:**

1. I'm young, healthy and .... to do as I please.
2. When I entered the hall all the seats were occupied and I could hardly find a ... seat.
3. Will you be ... tomorrow? Let's go to the country.
4. Let's find a ... classroom and rehearse our dialogue there.
5. I'm afraid I haven't ... time today.

#### **V. Study the text, put 10 questions to it and ask your group-mates to answer them.**

#### **VI. Dramatize the trial at which you will try Burton for willful murder. It may be arranged in the following way:**

**Student A** – speaking for the prosecution (he will describe all the facts proving Burton's guilt).

**Student B** – speaking for the defense (he will try and present all the facts that may speak in Burton's favour).

**Student C** – representing Burton himself (he will naturally try to defend himself).

**Student D, E, F...** – acting as witnesses for the prosecution or the defense.

## **II. TOPIC**

### **What Makes All People Kin**

People all over the world are very fond of sports and games. That is one of the things in which people of every nationality and class are united.

The most popular outdoor winter sports are **shooting, hunting, hockey** and, in the countries where the weather is frosty and there is much snow – **skating, skiing** and **tobogganing**. It's so nice to go to the skating-rink on a frosty sunny day. Some people prefer to be out of town in such weather and to sledge or to ski in the woods. Many people greatly enjoy **figure-skating** and **ski-jumping**.

Summer affords excellent opportunities for **swimming, boating, yachting, cycling, gliding** and many other sports. Among outdoor games **football** takes the first place in public interests; this game is played in all the countries of the world. The other games that have firmly established themselves in favour in different countries are **cricket, volley-ball, basketball**, and so on. **Badminton** is also very popular both with young and old.

All the year round many people indulge in **boxing, wrestling, gymnastics** and **track and field events**. Scores of young girls and women go in for **calisthenics**. Over the last few years aerobics has become popular with young girls and women. Aerobics helps them to be slim, healthy and strong.

Among indoor games which one can go in for all the year round are **billiards, table tennis, draughts, chess**, of course. The results of chess tournaments are studied and discussed by enthusiasts in different countries.

So we have all grounds to say that sport is one of the things that makes people kin.

## 9 Common Fitness Myths about Physical Exercises



Exercises are getting more popular day by day. People are becoming **fitness freaks** and are ready to explore several options! It seems as if people are in continuous search of newer and advanced methods of fitness regimes. With the rising popularity of exercises, myths are also on the rise. Myths are the misconceptions or false beliefs which are not based on any scientific rationale. What you hear is not always true.

Here are some of the most popular myths in the world of exercise and fitness.

### 1. *"No Pain No Gain"*.

Pain is a **warning sign** that indicates any potential harm to the body. You should not feel any type of pain during or after exercise. If you feel pain, it means you are **on the wrong track**. One must be able to differentiate between pain and discomfort. When you begin a new exercise, an initial mild discomfort is normal and it is due to **muscle soreness**. Don't force your body to continue with a **workout** if you perceive any kind of pain. Remember, if there is pain there will be no gain. With a proper and planned exercise regime one can gain without pain.

### 2. *Need of Frequent Hard Workouts*

This type of misconception keeps a lot of people away from an exercise program. But remember the old saying "something is better than nothing". Research suggests that even a minimal level of physical activity can help you **diminish the risk factors** of cardiovascular diseases. So, even if you do not have much time, go for some physical activities.

### ***3. No Sweating No Result***

Often people believe that **sweating** is related to hard work but, sweating is just a body's thermoregulatory mechanism to cool it and does not necessarily indicate the sign of exertion. One may sweat profusely at certain intensity of exercise in summers and may not even sweat with the same intensity in winters! It may be wrong to judge one's workout effectiveness on his/her degree of sweating. Also, there are individual variations and certain other determinants of the degree of sweating.

### ***4. More Exercises More Results***

**Excess** of anything is **harmful** and so are exercises! To certain extent one may be benefited by **overtraining**. But the same potentially increases the chances of getting injured. One must be aware of his/her potentials and fitness levels. Exercises work on the principle of overloading and not overtraining.

### ***5. Women Not Meant for Weight Training***

Weight training is an important component of exercise, which many women fear to! This is because of the common belief that **lifting weights** will make their muscles look masculine! But the fact is that women do not have sufficient testosterone to add to the bulkiness of their muscles. Weight training will strengthen and tone their muscles. The muscles will look lean, toned and tight.

### ***6. Spot Reduction***

This myth is spread all over the fitness world like a forest fire. You might have come across many **exercise equipments** in fitness centers. Training with these equipments through isolated exercises is believed to reduce your hips, thighs, abdomen etc. Physiologically it is impossible to isolate the body part and reduce the locally stored fat. Research has proved that fat mobilizes equally during exercises from all areas of the body. Isolated exercises will help you to strengthen the particular body part and you may find decrease in girth, as a result of increased muscle tone. But there is no loss of fat from that particular body part. The best way to burn fat is to follow a well planned exercise regime which includes both aerobic exercises and strength training. This will decrease the overall body fat.

### ***7. Yoga, the Safest Workout***

Yoga is a vast term and it includes various exercises and postures. Some of the exercises are **vigorous** and physically demanding. Failing to adhere to the right practices may give rise to many problems. One must be well aware of what to do and what not because some of the postures in yoga can aggravate problems like back pain, knee pain etc. You should **abide by the instructions** of a qualified instructor to facilitate safe workouts.

### 8. *Joining a Gym is Important for Weight Loss*

It's a common feeling that you need to join some fitness classes or go to gym to lose weight but, practically speaking home based fitness program has been proved to be equally effective in **losing weight**. To lose weight you need to burn calories, which can result from any physical activity whether it is done at gym or at home. What matters is your consistency! Sticking to your fitness regime religiously is the key to success.

### 9. *Age is a Constraint*

Many old people feel that it's too late to start with exercises. But they can safely participate in exercise programs. With regular exercises one can lead an independent and healthy life. Along with that, there is a generalized sense of wellbeing and improved quality of life. In case you have any health related problem consult your physician. It is never too late to join a fitness program!

Although people have become much aware about fitness, still many misconceptions keep them away from exercising! Some myths are harmless but some have the potential to harm you. There is no point in believing things which are untrue and ineffective because with belief, comes various expectations!

## TOPICAL VOCABULARY

• Fitness	• Sports terms
<p><b>fitness freaks</b> – капризи фітнесу <b>warning sign</b> – попереджувальний знак, <b>on the wrong track</b> – на хибному шляху, <b>muscle soreness</b> – біль у м'язах, <b>workout</b> – тренування, <b>diminish the risk factors</b> – зменшити фактори ризику, <b>to sweat</b> – пітніти, <b>excess</b> – надмірний, <b>harmful</b> – шкідливий, <b>overtraining</b> – надмірне тренування, <b>to lift weights</b> – піднімати вагу, <b>exercise equipments</b> – тренувальне обладнання (тренажери), <b>vigorous</b> – силовий, <b>abide by the instructions</b> – виконувати вказівки, <b>to lose weight</b> – втрачати вагу</p>	<p><b>amateur (professional)</b> – аматорський (професійний), <b>championship</b> – чемпіонат, <b>to compete</b> – змагатися, <b>competition</b> – змагання, <b>final match</b> – фінальний матч, <b>events</b> – змагання, <b>sporting tournament</b> – спортивний турнір</p>

• Some popular sports	• Some popular games
<b>archery</b> – стрільба з лука, <b>artistic gymnastics (calisthenics)</b> – художня гімнастика (аеробіка), <b>athletics</b> – атлетика, <b>boxing</b> – бокс, <b>car racing</b> – автоперегони, <b>cycling</b> – велоспорт, <b>diving</b> – пірнання, <b>fencing</b> – фехтування, <b>figure-skating</b> – фігурне катання, <b>hurdle races</b> – перегони з перешкодами, <b>hunting</b> – мисливство, <b>gymnastics</b> – гімнастика, <b>gliding</b> – планерний спорт, <b>mountaineering</b> – альпінізм, <b>rowing and canoeing</b> – гребля, <b>shooting</b> – стрільба, <b>skating</b> – катання на ковзанах, <b>skiing</b> – катання на лижах, <b>ski-jumping</b> – стрибки на лижах, <b>steeplechase</b> – біг з перешкодами, <b>swimming</b> – плавання, <b>track and field events</b> – легка атлетика, <b>weight-lifting</b> – піднімання ваги, <b>windsurfing</b> – віндсерфінг, <b>wrestling</b> – боротьба, <b>yachting</b> – вітрильний спорт, <b>run</b> - біг	<b>Open-air games:</b> <b>badminton</b> – бадмінтон, <b>basket-ball</b> – баскетбол, <b>cricket</b> – крикет, <b>football</b> – футбол, <b>golf</b> –гольф, <b>rugby</b> – регбі, <b>tennis</b> – теніс, <b>water polo</b> – водне поло, <b>hockey</b> - хокей <b>Indoor games:</b> <b>billiards</b> – більярд, <b>chess</b> – шахи, <b>draughts</b> – шашки, <b>table-tennis</b> – настільний теніс
	<b>Sport Equipment</b>
	<b>barbell</b> – штанга, <b>beam</b> – перекладина, <b>chessboard</b> – шахова дошка, <b>discus</b> – диск, <b>javelin</b> – спис, <b>net</b> – сітка, <b>racket</b> – ракетка, <b>rings</b> – кільця, <b>trampoline</b> – батут

## Additional Topic

### Sports in Great Britain

Sports play an important part in the life in Britain and is a popular leisure activity. Many of the world's famous sports began in Britain, including cricket, football, lawn tennis, golf and rugby.

England's national sport is cricket although to many people football (soccer) is seen as our national sport. Football is our most popular sport. Some of England's football teams are world famous, the most famous being Manchester United, Arsenal and Liverpool.

#### *Cricket*

Cricket is played on village greens and in towns/cities on Sundays from April to August. The rules of cricket became the responsibility, in the 18th century, of the Marylebone Cricket Club, based at Lord's cricket ground in north London.



### *How to play Cricket*

Teams are made up of 11 players each. They play with a ball slightly smaller than a baseball and a bat shaped like a paddle. Two batters stand in front of wickets, set about 20 metres apart. Each wicket consists of three wooden rods (stumps) pushed into the ground, with two small pieces of wood (bails) balanced on top. A member of the opposing team (the bowler) throws the ball towards one of the batters, who must hit the ball so that it does not knock a bail off the wicket. If the ball travels far enough, the two batters run back and forth between the wickets while the fielders on the opposing team try to catch the ball. The game is scored according to the number of runs, which is the number of times the batters exchange places.

### ***Football (Soccer)***

Football is undoubtedly the most popular sport in England, and has been played for hundreds of years. In the English Football League there are 92 professional clubs. These are semi-professional, so most players have other full-time jobs. Hundreds of thousands of people also play football in parks and playgrounds just for fun. The highlight of the English football year is the FA (Football Association) Cup Final each May.

### ***Rugby***

Rugby originated from Rugby school in Warwickshire. It is similar to football, but played with an oval ball. Players can carry the ball and tackle each other. The best rugby teams compete in the Super League final each September. For many years Rugby was only played by the rich upper classes, but now it is popular all over the country. There are two different types of rugby - Rugby League, played mainly in the north of England, and Rugby Union, played in the rest of England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland. England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland, together with France and Italy, play in an annual tournament called the Six Nations.

### ***Tennis***

The world's most famous tennis tournament is Wimbledon. It started at a small club in south London in the nineteenth century. It begins on the nearest Monday to June 22, at a time when English often have the finest weather. Millions of people watch the Championships on TV live. It is traditional for visitors to eat strawberries and cream whilst they watch the tennis.

### ***Netball***

Netball is the largest female team sport in England. The sport is played almost exclusively by women and girls, although male participation has increased in recent years.

***Basketball.*** Over 3 million people participate in basketball in the UK.

### ***Golf***

Scotland is traditionally regarded as the home of golf. There are over 400 golf courses in Scotland alone. The most important golf club in Scotland is in the seaside town of St. Andrews, near Dundee.

### ***Horse racing***

Horsing, the sport of Kings is a very popular sport with meetings being held every day throughout the year. The Derby originated here, as did The Grand National which is the hardest horse race in the world.

Horse racing and greyhound racing are popular spectator sports. People can place bets on the races at legal off-track betting shops. Some of the best-known horse races are held at Ascot, Newmarket, Goodwood and Epsom.

Ascot, a small town in the south of England, becomes the centre of horse-racing world for one week in June. It's called Royal Ascot because the Queen always goes to Ascot. She has a lot of racehorses and likes to watch racing.

### ***Polo***

Another equestrian sport is polo, brought to Britain from India in the 19th Century by army officers. It is the fastest ball sport in the world.

Polo is played with four men on horses to a team. A ball is hit with a stick towards the goal, one at each end of a 300 yard long by 160 yard wide field...

### ***Table Tennis (ping pong)***

Table tennis was invented in England in 1880. It began with Cambridge University students using cigar boxes and champagne corks.

Although the game originated in England, British players don't have much luck in international championships.

### ***Badminton***

Badminton takes its name from the Duke of Beaufort's country home, Badminton House, where the sport was first played in the 19th century.

### ***University Boat Race***

In the nineteenth century, students at Oxford and Cambridge, Britain's two oldest universities, were huge fans of rowing. In 1829, the two schools agreed to hold a race against each other for the first time on the Thames River. The Oxford boat won and a tradition was born. Today, the University Boat Race is held every spring in either late March or early April.

### ***Fishing (Angling)***

Angling is one of the most popular sports in the UK, with an estimated 3.3 million people participating in the sport on a regular basis. Fishermen can be seen sitting beside rivers and lakes.

### ***Bowls.***

The two main forms of bowls are lawn flat green (outdoor and indoor) and crown green.

### ***Boxing***

Boxing in its modern form is based on the rules established by the Marquess of Queensberry in 1865. In the UK boxing is both amateur and professional, and strict medical regulations are applied in both.

### ***Swimming***

Swimming is also a popular pastime and enjoyed by people of all ages.

### ***Martial arts***

Various martial arts, mainly derived from the Far East, are practised in the UK, such as judo and karate.

### ***Darts***

Darts is a very popular pub game. The game of darts, as it is today, was invented in the north of England in a town called Grimsby. However, the origins of the game date back to at least the Middle Ages.

### ***Boxing Day Hunts***

Traditionally Boxing Day is a day for fox hunting. The huntsmen and huntswomen ride horses. They use dogs too. The dogs (fox hounds) follow the smell of the fox. Then the huntsmen and huntswomen follow the hounds.

Before a Boxing Day hunt, the huntsmen and huntswomen drink hot wine. But the tradition of the December 26th is changing. Now, some people want to stop Boxing Day hunts (and other hunts too). They don't like fox hunting. For them it is not a sport - it is cruel.

## **DIALOGUES**

### **1) Do You Play Any Games?**

*Bill:* Say, Jack, what's your favourite sport?

*Jack:* Hmm... It's hard to say. I like football a lot – but I guess I like tennis better.

*Bill:* Do you play much tennis?

*Jack:* Yes, quite a bit. How about a game some time?

*Bill:* Sorry. I'm strictly a spectator – football, baseball, basketball... I watch them all.

*Jack:* And do you play chess?

*Bill:* Yes, I do. How about you, Jack? Want a game of chess, do you?

*Jack:* Well, I happen to be one of the best players around.

*Bill:* Well, let's play then. We'll see who is the best!

### **2) Mr Smith is discussing the football with his wife.**

*Mr. Smith:* I've been thinking about exchanging our football tickets. Instead of going to Friday's game, I think we should go on Saturday. Then, John and his friend Mark could come with us because they wouldn't have school the next day. What do you think?

*Mrs Smith :* I think that's a great idea. I didn't really like the idea of keeping John out of school just to get to a football match.

*Mr Smith:* I know. So, shall we swap them?

*Mrs Smith:* Well, first, let me check with Mark's parents to see if he's free on Saturday.

*Mr Smith:* OK, go for it!

*Mrs Smith: (Dials the phone)* Hello Mark. It's Joan, Joan Smith, John's mother. I was wondering are you free this Saturday? And if you are would you like to come to the match with us?

*Mark:* Yes, I'm free and I'd love to, but I'll have to check with my parents. *(Pause)* Yes, they say it's fine. I can go. Could you give me a lift though?

*Mrs Smith:* That's great! John will be glad, and of course we can pick you up. How does 2 p.m. sound?

*Mark:* Sounds great. I'll look forward to it.

*Mrs Smith:* OK, we'll see you on Saturday and John will see you at school tomorrow.

*Mark:* OK, thanks Mrs. Smith. I can't wait!

*Mrs Smith:* OK Mark, we'll see you then. Have a good evening, give my regards to your mum and dad. *(Hangs up the phone)*

*Mr Smith:* So, is he coming?

*Mrs Smith:* Yes. Let's go and change those Friday tickets.

## EXERCISES

### 1. Match the game with its description:

1. Badminton	a) A team game, usually played outdoors, with a bat, a ball, and stumps, There are 11 players on each team.
2. Cricket	b) A team sport, played outdoors, with an oval ball, and two teams of 15 players.
3. Football	c) Usually played by individuals, using several types of golf clubs and a golf ball.
4. Golf	d) A racquet sport played by either two players (singles) or two pairs (doubles). Played on a court divided by a net with racquets and a shuttlecock.
5. Rugby	e) A racquet sport played by either two players (singles) or two pairs (doubles). Played on a court divided by a net with racquets and a ball.
6. Tennis	f) A team sport, usually played outdoors, with a round ball, with two teams of 11 players, and a goalie.

### 2. Fill in the necessary words:

*fashion, depression, to do exercises, marathons, keeping fit, integral part, regular exercise, most accessible, disease, participating.*

The fitness boom of the past decades led to a big rise in the numbers of people \_\_\_\_\_ (1) in sports and activities. Those who pursue the latest fitness \_\_\_\_\_ (2) are convinced that staying in good physical form requires much more than \_\_\_\_\_ (3) and balanced meals. For anyone who really wants to be healthy, fitness has become an \_\_\_\_\_ (4) of their lives. A lot of health and

fitness clubs, and public leisure centers indicate the popularity of sports during the past thirty years. There are many opportunities for \_\_\_\_\_ (5). First of all it's necessary \_\_\_\_\_ (6). Running, jumping, swimming, bending and stretching are among the most popular exercises. Many people prefer jogging, which is the cheapest and the \_\_\_\_\_ (7) sport. Popular running competitions are now held everywhere. The big city \_\_\_\_\_ (8) have become sporting events. A healthy body becomes a fashion, an ideal of the modern life. The best way to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (9) caused by the city life is doing exercises. Taking exercise is only one part of keeping fit. It's important to get slim. Some people eat nothing but fruit for several days. But it won't be of any use without proper exercises. Besides to avoid serious \_\_\_\_\_ (10) one should give up smoking. Smoking should be banned in all public places.

### 3. What kinds of sports are at the pictures? Describe them:



### 4. Fill in the articles if necessary:

We are sure you are all interested in ...sport. Many of you certainly play such games as ...volleyball or ...football, ...basketball or ...tennis. People who play ... game are players. Players form teams and play matches with other teams — their opponents. Two players playing with each other are partners. Each team can lose or win. In ... football match ....players try to score as many goals as they can.

Most matches take place in ...large stadiums.

Athletics is ... most popular sport. People call it '... queen of all sports'. It comprises such kinds of sports as: running (for different distances), jumping (long and high jumps) and others.

From time to time ...international championships and races (horse-races, motor-races, cycle-races) take place. Representatives of various countries can win ... gold, silver or bronze medal. Such great championships in sport are organized every four years and we call them ...Olympic Games. Only ... best may take part in them.

There are so many kinds of sports, such as cycling, swimming, gymnastics, boxing, skating, skiing, rowing, yachting and many more in which you can take ... active part or just be ... devoted fan.

### 5. Match the parts of sentences:

1. If you don't keep fit,	a) to the people they work or study with.
2. Team sports help people to develop a good attitude	b) helps your mind to be clearer.
3. You need to understand that you can achieve more	c) as part of a team than as an individual.
4. Sport makes people	d) you'll end up in a hospital.
5. Keeping your body healthy	e) way to look after yourself.
6. Doing sport is a very sociable and enjoyable	f) behave in a less selfish way.

### 6. Use the definitions and the clues below to try to find words in the dictionary.

- 1) **ja** \_\_\_\_\_ : a field sport where athletes throw a long spear
- 2) **di** \_\_\_\_\_ : a beautiful sport where athletes plunge into water in style
- 3) **te** \_\_\_\_\_ : a racquet sport where athletes hit a ball back and forth over a dividing net
- 4) **hu** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes compete by running and jumping over several frames
- 5) **fe** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes use a blunt rapier to hit an opponent
- 6) **sh** \_\_\_\_\_ : a field sport where athletes throw a heavy metal ball
- 7) **vo** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes serve, jump and spike the ball
- 8) **ar** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow
- 9) **ba** \_\_\_\_\_ : a pitcher throws the ball and a batter hits the ball with a bat
- 10) **ba** \_\_\_\_\_ : a popular sport in the USA where athletes slam and dunk the ball into a hanging basket-like ring
- 11) **cy** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes compete by riding bicycles
- 12) **gy** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes do several acrobatic stunts and are judge by a panel of judges
- 13) **bo** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes wear special gloves and punch each other
- 14) **ba** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes use a racquet to hit a feathered

ball(shuttlecock)

15) **sw** \_\_\_\_\_ : a water sport where athletes compete by swimming fast

16) **fo** \_\_\_\_\_ : athletes dribble and kick the ball

**7. Tick the word that matches the meaning that is given:**

\_\_\_\_\_ 1) "**badminton**"

A. a popular sport in the USA where athletes slam and dunk the ball into a hanging basket-like ring

B. athletes use a racquet to hit a feathered ball(shuttlecock)

C. a field sport where athletes throw a long spear

D. athletes serve, jump and spike the ball

\_\_\_\_\_ 2) "**boxing**"

A. athletes wear special gloves and punch each other

B. a field sport where athletes throw a heavy metal ball

C. a water sport where athletes compete by swimming fast

D. athletes serve, jump and spike the ball

\_\_\_\_\_ 3) "**volleyball**"

A. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow

B. athletes compete by riding a horse over a barrier

C. athletes compete by riding bicycles

D. athletes serve, jump and spike the ball

\_\_\_\_\_ 4) "**archery**"

A. athletes serve, jump and spike the ball

B. athletes compete by riding a horse over a barrier

C. a water sport where athletes compete by swimming fast

D. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow

\_\_\_\_\_ 5) "**javelin**"

A. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow

B. a field sport where athletes throw a long spear

C. athletes compete by running and jumping over several frames

D. a beautiful sport where athletes plunge into water in style

\_\_\_\_\_ 6) "**fencing**"

A. athletes use a blunt rapier to hit an opponent

B. athletes compete by running and jumping over several frames

C. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow

D. a pitcher throws the ball and a batter hits the ball with a bat

\_\_\_\_\_ 7) "**gymnastics**"

A. a popular sport in the USA where athletes slam and dunk the ball into a hanging basket-like ring

B. athletes do several acrobatic stunts and are judge by a panel of judges

C. athletes use a racquet to hit a feathered ball(shuttlecock)

D. a pitcher throws the ball and a batter hits the ball with a bat

\_\_\_\_\_ 8) "**diving**"

- A. athletes wear special gloves and punch each other
- B. a beautiful sport where athletes plunge into water in style
- C. athletes serve, jump and spike the ball
- D. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow

\_\_\_\_\_ 9) "hurdles"

- A. athletes compete by shooting an arrow with a bow
- B. athletes dribble and kick the ball
- C. athletes compete by running and jumping over several frames
- D. a water sport where athletes compete by swimming fast

**8. Can you find and correct the six mistakes in this email about sport?**

There's nobody in the world as mad on sport than my sister. She wakes up talking about it, and plays it all second she car of the day. I think she dreams about it at night. Her bedroom walls is covered in posters of famous sportspeople. All her friends are just the same. I'm total different. I can take it or leave it. I watch a game of football occasionally, but only if there isn't the good film on.

**9. a) Speak on each kind of sport on the list below: describe this kind of sport, qualities it requires from the sportsman, its advantages and attractive features:**

Mountaineering; rowing; yachting; football; hockey; tennis; badminton; basketball; chess; boxing; wrestling; fencing; calisthenics; figure-skating; skiing; ski-jumping.

**b) Make up dialogues discussing one (or several) of the sports from the list above. Use the following:**

In my opinion...; there's nothing like...; as for me...; I don't quite see what people find in...; how can you say such a thing!; I don't know anything more exciting than...; I can't agree with you here; absolutely marvelous; I like it immensely.

**10. Read and translate the text into Ukrainian:**

**The Olympic Games**

The original Olympic Games were held every four years in honour of Zeus, the supreme god of Greek religion. The first record of the games dates from 776 B.C., but it is certain that they existed prior to that. They were held continuously for over 1.000 years until they were abolished in the reign of King Theodosius about 392 A.D. The Olympic festival was a great unifying bond between the Independent city-states of Greece.

The important sports in the original Olympic Games were running, jumping, wrestling, throwing the discus and throwing the javelin. Only men competed and they wore no clothes in order to have greater freedom of movement. Each



competitor had to take the Olympic Oath - a promise to behave in a sportsman-like fashion.

The modern Olympic era began in 1894 when Frenchman Baron Pierre de Coubertin decided to revive the ancient Greek tradition of celebrating health, youth and peace with a sports festival. Baron de Coubertin created the International Olympic Committee (IOC) and the first modern Olympiad took place in Athens in 1896. Since then the Olympic Games have been held every four years with only two exceptions because of the two world wars.

Even though the modern Olympic Games embrace the whole world, the connection with Greece is still very strong. A lighted torch is brought all the way from Greece, carried by a relay of runners, in order to light the Olympic Flame which burns all through the Games. As in ancient Greek times, the competitors still take the Olympic Oath. The long-distance race is still called the Marathon. Marathon was a village about 26 miles from Athens. In the year 490 BC the Greeks defeated a powerful Persian army at that spot. After the fierce day's fighting a soldier volunteered to bring news of the victory to the anxious citizens of Athens. He ran all the way and after gasping out the message. "Rejoice, we conquer!" he collapsed and died.

One important rule of the Olympic Games is that the competitors must be amateurs. This rule has been under a lot of pressure in recent years because modern sport is so professional and competitive. Athletes train for years to take part in the Olympics and some countries spend much more than others on equipment and facilities. But despite these pressures, the amateur rule remains.

In modern times the Olympic movement has become an enormous and expensive organisation, It's controlled by the International Olympic Committee, which consists of members from all the participating countries. The IOC is based in Lausanne, Switzerland. It chooses the locations of both summer and winter games (both take place once every four years, with winter games half a year before summer Olympiads). It also controls the rules of the competitions and selects new Olympic sports. The famous flag of the IOC shows five rings of different colours linked together. The rings represent the five continents.

### **11. Put the words in each sentence in the correct order:**

1. Athens/ held/ Olympic Games/ The/ first/ in/ modern/ were/ 1896./ in
2. gold/ winner/ wins/ each/ of/ a/ competition/ The/ medal.
3. winners/ played./ their/ When/ medal,/ their/ the/ national/ receive/ anthem/ is
4. also/ 1924./ years/ been/ Winter Olympics/ every/ has/ a/ four/ since/ There
5. only/ compete/ Before/ the/ amateurs/ could/ in/ Olympic Games./ 1988
6. watched/ people/ Over/ the/ television./ Sydney Olympics/ 3.5/ billion/on
7. in/ thousand/ More/ than/ 2004/ competitors/ took/ eleven/ part/ in/ Summer Olympics./ the/ Sydney
8. the/ The/ large/ it/ of/ who/ take/ Olympics./ makes/ number/ difficult/ expensive/ part/ for/ host/ to/ people/ cities/ organize/ and

## **12. Read the following questions and discuss them with your partner:**

1. Do you watch the Olympic Games? Which sports are your favourites?
2. The Olympic Games were originally meant for amateur sports enthusiasts. Nowadays many competitors are professional. Is this fair?
3. Are the Olympic Games just a "festival of sport" as originally intended, or are they unduly influenced by modern politics?
4. Many people around the world had hoped that the centenary of the Olympic Games would be held in Athenes (where the Games started). However the Games that year were held in Atlanta, USA, home of a large soft-drinks company which is, coincidentally, a major sponsor of the Olympic Games. It was alleged at the time that sponsors had too much say in the organization of the Olympics. How much say do you think sponsors of major sporting events should have?
5. Do you think it can ever be acceptable to take drugs or medicines during a sports competition such as the Olympics?
6. How do you think athletes who cheat should be treated? Should they be disqualified, banned, stripped of their medals or given a second chance?

## **13. Render the texts in English:**

a) Футбол - олімпійський вид спорту, командна спортивна гра, в якій беруть участь дві команди по одинадцять гравців в кожній. Футбол є одним з найпопулярніших видів спорту у світі. У футбол грають м'ячем на прямокутному трав'яному полі (іноді траву замінюють штучним покриттям) з воротами на двох протилежних сторонах поля. Метою гри є забити якомога більше голів; тобто, завести м'яч у ворота супротивника якомога більше разів. Головною особливістю футболу є те, що гравці (за винятком воротарів) не можуть в межах ігрового поля торкатися м'яча руками. Переможцем гри є команда, що забила за час матчу (два тайми по 45 хвилин) більше голів, ніж супротивник.

b) Баскетбол – спортивна гра з м'ячем. Грають 2 команди по 5 чол. на майданчику 28 X 15 м. На коротких сторонах майданчика укріплені на щитах на висоті 305 см «кошики» — металеві кільця діаметром 45 см з мотузкою сіткою без дна. Переможцем визнається команда, якій вдалось більше число разів закинути м'яч у «кошик» супротивників. Тривалість гри — чотири періоди по 10 хвилин, з півторахвилинними перервами між першою та другою і третьою й четвертою чвертями, та великою перервою у 15 хвилин між другим та третім періодом. В Національній баскетбольній Асоціації гра триває 48 хвилин і розбивається на 4 чверті.

### **III. GRAMMAR**

#### **All tenses revision**

**I. Using the words in parentheses, complete the text below with the appropriate tenses:**

1. You look really great! (you, work) \_\_\_\_\_ out at the fitness center recently?
2. A: What (you, do) \_\_\_\_\_ when the accident occurred?  
B: I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to change a light bulb that had burnt out.
3. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ the same car for more than ten years. I'm thinking about buying a new one.
4. If it (snow) \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend, we (go) skiing near Lake Tahoe.
5. I came to England six months ago. I started my economics course three months ago. When I return to Australia, I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ for nine months and I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in England for exactly one year.
6. Sam (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ in San Diego a week ago.
7. Samantha (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Berlin for more than two years. In fact, she (live) \_\_\_\_\_ there when the Berlin wall came down.
8. If Vera (keep) \_\_\_\_\_ drinking, she (lose, eventually) her job.
9. The Maya established a very advanced civilization in the jungles of the Yucatan; however, their culture (disappear, virtually) \_\_\_\_\_ by the time Europeans first (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ in the New World.
10. Shhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_.
11. It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ all week. I hope it stops by Saturday because I want to go to the beach.
12. I am sick of rain and bad weather! Hopefully, when we (wake) \_\_\_\_\_ up tomorrow morning, the sun (shine) .
13. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ many pictures of the pyramids before I went to Egypt. Pictures of the monuments are very misleading. The pyramids are actually quite small.
14. When I (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ home last night, I discovered that Jane (prepare) \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful candlelight dinner.
15. If you (need) \_\_\_\_\_ to contact me sometime next week, I (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Sheraton in San Francisco.

**II. Fix the mistakes in the sentences below.**

1. Earl didn't went to the doctor yesterday.
2. Did you took a shower?
3. Ingrid don't walk to school today because she was tired.
4. James and Christine took an airplane to China. They didn't took a boat.
5. My father didn't gave me any money today.
6. Fran didn't took any pictures because her camera was broken.

7. Kirk and Lori are not in school yesterday.
8. Mandy is not sick last week.

**III. Write sentences from the words in the given tense.**

1. He – be – an interesting man (*past indefinite*)
2. I – arrive – at 11. (*going-to future*)
3. Many people – wear – dark clothes – at night (*present indefinite*)
4. He – discuss – the topic – for the last two weeks (*present perfect continuous*)
5. They – just finish – homework (*present perfect*)
6. She –get up- now? (*present continuous*)
7. When – he – come back –workers – already clean –pavement (*past indefinite and past perfect*)
8. What –you – do - yesterday evening?(*past continuous*)
9. The boys –play – football – whole day (*present perfect continuous*)
10. He –often – shop – Harrods. (*present indefinite*)
11. He said – Mum –already – go out (*past perfect*)
12. I – run into –Tom- yesterday (*past indefinite*)
13. Next week – I – sit – on the beach (*future continuous*)
14. The sales – start – next Monday (*present continuous*)
15. When – I – enter – classroom – lesson – go on (*past indefinite and continuous*)
16. Can – you – ski – when – you – be - little ?(*past indefinite*)
17. I – ski – when – I – be – at the university (*past indefinite*)
18. How long – you – work – company? (*present perfect continuous*)
19. I – learn – type – now (*present continuous*)
20. You – hear – from – him –lately? (*present perfect*)

**IV. Change the direct speech into reported speech. Use 'she said' at the beginning of each answer:**

- 1) "He works in a bank"
- 2) "We went out last night"
- 3) "I'm coming!"
- 4) "I was waiting for the bus when he arrived"
- 5) "I'd never been there before"
- 6) "I didn't go to the party"
- 7) "Lucy will come later"
- 8) "He hasn't eaten breakfast"
- 9) "I can help you tomorrow"
- 10) "You should go to bed early"
- 11) "I don't like chocolate"
- 12) "I won't see you tomorrow"
- 13) "She's living in Paris for a few months"

- 14) "I visited my parents at the weekend"
- 15) "She hasn't eaten sushi before"
- 16) "I hadn't travelled by underground before I came to London"
- 17) "They would help if they could"
- 18) "I'll do the washing-up later"
- 19) "He could read when he was three"
- 20) "I was sleeping when Julie called"

#### ***IV. WRITING***

**Write an essay on one of the following topics:**

- 1. My Favourite Sport.**
- 2. Sport in Our Life.**
- 3. Professional Sport or Amateur Sport, Which Is It to Be?**

# MODULE 4

## UNIT 7

### MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

#### *I. TEXT*

##### **Getting your Message Across**

From a smile and a wave to a **message** on the Internet, **communication keeps us in touch** with each other and the rest of the world.

Communication is the sending of messages from one living thing to another. It is part of the process of staying alive and of **surviving**. In the animal kingdom, most communication is connected with survival. Animals use **scents**, sounds and actions to show their young how to behave, or to protect themselves against **predators**. For example, when an angry cat **arches** its back and opens its **claws** it means 'keep your distance'!

Like animals, human beings also use non-verbal methods of communication. Sometimes we do this more than we realize. When your parents read your university report, they may not need to say anything to show you how they feel. The way they hold the report and the look on their faces **immediately** tells you if they are delighted, surprised, disappointed or angry.

In fact facial expressions and **gestures** have always been a powerful way of communicating and many expressions have the same meaning all over the world. For example, people smile when they are happy or **frown** when they are sad. Equally, showing your open hands is widely recognized as a **sign** of peace, while raising a **clenched fist** can be a sign of anger or aggression. However, some gestures may have different meanings in different places. A friendly sign in one culture might be impolite in another - so take care!

Another way of showing your feelings is through **touch** or sounds that aren't words. **Sighs** and **groans** can show that you are bored, depressed or frustrated; laughter usually tells people that you are amused or delighted; and screams indicate that you are frightened. Handshakes, kisses and **hugs** are different ways of greeting people. And hugs and kisses can be signs of **affection** and love.

Many animals have specially adapted body parts which help them to communicate visually. A **stag** for example has dangerous **antlers** to warn off predators. In contrast, human bodies are not specially developed in this way. However, what we wear can say a lot about us. Business people and politicians usually wear expensive suits in order to appear serious, people in the entertainment industry wear **glamorous outfits**, and teenagers might wear designer jeans and

**pierce** their noses. So when you meet someone for the first time, remember, it's not just what you say that makes an impression, but also what you wear and what you do!

*(from "The Young Oxford Book of The Human Being" by David Glover)*

### Vocabulary Notes

**message** – *n* [count.] a piece of information that you tell someone, send to them, or leave for them (повідомлення)

*E.g.* Did you get my message?

**communication** – *n* [uncount.] when people talk to each other or give each other information (комунікація, спілкування)

*communication between*

*be in communication with somebody/something*

*E.g.* The pilot stayed in communication with the control tower.

The Internet is an important means of communication.

**to survive** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to continue to live after an accident, war, illness etc (вижити)

*E.g.* She survived the war.

They may not survive the winter.

**scent** – *n* 1. [count.] a pleasant smell (запах)

*scent of*

*E.g.* the scent of roses

2. [count.] the smell that an animal or person leaves behind them

*E.g.* The dogs soon picked up the fox's scent (=were able to follow the smell).

**predator** – *n* [count.] an animal that kills and eats other animals (хижак)

**to arch** – *v* [trans., intrans.] to form a curved shape, or to make something form a curved shape (вигнутися)

*E.g.* The cat arched her back and hissed.

**claw** – *n* [count.] a sharp curved nail on an animal or bird (пазур)

**immediately** – *adv* without delay (негайно)

*E.g.* Open this door immediately!

**gesture** – *n* [count.] a movement of your head, arm, or hand to express your feelings (жест)

*gesture of*

*E.g.* Jim raised his hand in a gesture of despair. • He's making rude gestures at us.

**to frown** – *v* [intrans.] to make an angry or unhappy expression by moving your eyebrows together (нахмуритися)

*frown at*

*E.g.* Mel frowned at me.

**frown on/upon something** – *phrasal verb* to disapprove of something

*E.g.* Smoking is allowed, but frowned upon.

**sign** – *n* [count.] a piece of wood, metal, plastic etc with words or pictures on it to give people information (знак)

*E.g.* a 'No Smoking' sign.

What does that sign say (=what words are written on it)?

**to clench** – *v* [trans.] to close your hands, mouth etc tightly (зжати, зімкнути)

*E.g.* Hal clenched his fists in anger.

**touch** – *n* [count. usually sing.] the action of putting your hand, finger etc on someone or something (дотик)

*touch of*

*E.g.* Rita felt the touch of his hand on her arm.

**in touch (with somebody)** if you are in touch with someone, you speak or write to them regularly (на зв'язку з кимось)

*E.g.* Are you still in touch with John?

*keep/stay in touch*

*E.g.* Bye, Jane! Don't forget to stay in touch.

We'll get in touch (=phone or write to you) when we know the results of the test.

**to sigh** – *v* [intrans.] to take a deep breath and breathe out slowly and loudly because you are annoyed or unhappy (зітхати)

*E.g.* Phil sighed heavily and shook his head.

**to groan** – *v* [intrans.] to make a long deep sound because you are in pain, or are not happy about something (стогнати)

*E.g.* Captain Marsh was holding his arm and groaning.

**to hug** – *v* [intrans.] to put your arms around someone and hold them, because you like or love them (обнімати)

*E.g.* We hugged and said goodnight.

**affection** – *n* [count., uncount.] a feeling of liking or loving someone (приязнь, любов)

*affection for*

*E.g.* Barry felt a great affection for her.

**stag** – *n* [count.] a male deer (олень)

**antlers** – horns on the head of the male deer (оленячі ріжки)

**glamorous** – *adj* attractive, exciting, and related to wealth or success (гламурний)

**outfit** – *n* [count.] a set of clothes that you wear together (одяг)

*E.g.* She was wearing her usual outfit of white blouse and black skirt.

**to pierce** – *v* [trans.] to make a hole in or through something using an object with a sharp point (проткнути)

*E.g.* A bullet pierced his body.

I'm getting my ears pierced (=having holes for jewellery made in my ears).



## EXERCISES

### I. Read the text and find the equivalents to the following expressions:

1. спілкування зберігає зв'язок;
2. надсилання повідомлень від одної живої істоти до іншої;
3. тварини використовують запахи, звуки і рухи;
4. захистити себе від хижаків;
5. невербальні засоби комунікації;
6. вираз обличчя;
7. багато виразів мають однакове значення у всьому світі;
8. знак злості і агресивності;
9. різні способи привітання людей;
10. спеціально призначені частини тіла.

### II. Fill in the words from the list, then make up sentences using the completed phrases:

*surviving, adapted, hugs, impression, feel, realize, messages, jeans, smile, to behave.*

1. communication is the sending of \_\_\_\_\_;
2. process of staying alive and of \_\_\_\_\_;
3. to show their young how \_\_\_\_\_, or to protect themselves;
4. Sometimes we do this more than we \_\_\_\_\_;
5. they may not need to say anything to show you how they \_\_\_\_\_;
6. people \_\_\_\_\_ when they are happy;
7. handshakes, kisses and \_\_\_\_\_ are different ways of greeting people.;
8. many animals have specially \_\_\_\_\_ body parts;
9. teenagers might wear designer \_\_\_\_\_ and pierce their noses;
10. it's not just what you say that makes an \_\_\_\_\_.

### III. Fill in the correct prepositions:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a smile and a wave \_\_\_\_\_ a message \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet;
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the animal kingdom most communication is connected \_\_\_\_\_ survival;
3. human beings also use non-verbal methods \_\_\_\_\_ communication;
4. the look \_\_\_\_\_ their faces immediately tells you;
5. \_\_\_\_\_ fact facial expressions and gestures have always been a powerful way \_\_\_\_\_ communicating;
6. many expressions have the same meaning \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ the world;
7. raising a clenched fist can be a sign \_\_\_\_\_ anger or aggression;
8. some gestures may have different meanings \_\_\_\_\_ different places;
9. a stag has dangerous antlers to warn \_\_\_\_\_ predators;
10. human bodies are not specially developed \_\_\_\_\_ this way.

#### IV. The expressions 1-5 are in the article. Match them with their meanings

a-e:

1. keeps us in touch	a) change something for a specific purpose
2. is widely recognised	b) to threaten someone or something
3. take care	c) think about what you are doing
4. specially adapted	d) accepted around the world
5. to warn off	e) stay in contact with someone

#### V. Read the text carefully and number the points in the order in which they appear.

- \_\_\_ a) We use clothes to tell people about ourselves.
- \_\_\_ b) In some countries you need to be careful about non-verbal communication.
- \_\_\_ c) Animals have changed themselves physically in order to communicate.
- \_\_\_ d) Some actions have similar meanings in different countries.
- \_\_\_ e) You can guess people's feelings by looking at their faces.
- \_\_\_ f) Animals use different ways of communicating to defend themselves.
- \_\_\_ g) Animals and humans sometimes communicate in a similar way.

#### VI. Retell the text.

### II. TOPIC

#### Means of Communication



There are various ways through which we communicate with each other. These may be called as the means of communication. In face-to-face contact we use different parts of our body or we directly talk to others while communicating our message.

Where face-to-face communication is not possible, we take the help of some other means through which we usually **convey our messages**. For example, we may use letters to convey written messages; **talk to others over telephones**; send telegrams and use various other modern machines like computers, fax machine,

etc. to communicate our messages. The means to be used in our communication process depend upon the purpose of communication. For example, to send any urgent message we generally use telephone; for any important matter for which a written document is required, we use letter, telegram, fax, etc. Nowadays modern technology has given us a wide option to choose the means according to our requirement and liking. Let us discuss some of the important means of communication commonly used in business.

### **Letters:**

Letters are a written form of communication. These can be sent or received by individuals or organizations. Written messages in the form of letters can be **delivered** to the **receivers** through special **messenger, post offices** or private **couriers**. This method is mostly used where face-to-face communication is difficult or other means are not easily available. It helps in **keeping a record** of the communication. The cost involved is low in this means of communication.

### **Telegram:**

It is also a form of written communication by which messages can be sent quickly to distant places. It is generally used when there is an urgency of communicating any important message. It **transmits** message much faster than **ordinary postal mail**. This facility is available in all telegraph offices, where on payment of **specific fee**, we send our message. Charges are payable on the basis of number of words used in writing the message including the address of the receiver and sender's name. Hence, telegraphic messages are written **in brief**. Telegrams can be sent as **ordinary or express**. Express telegrams travel faster than ordinary telegram, for which **extra charge** is to be paid. To send telegrams to foreign countries **cablegrams** are used. Telegrams can also be sent by using telephone, which is called as **phonogram**. Here by ringing up the telegraph office through a telephone, the message can be recorded and later the telegraph office transmits the message to the receiver.

### **Phones:**

Telephone is a very popular form of oral communication. It is widely used for internal and external business communications. Long distance communication is facilitated by STD (**Subscriber Trunk Dialing**) while international communication can be made through ISD (**International Subscriber Dialing**) facilities. Both government and private agencies provide telecom services. Telephone is mostly preferred as it helps in establishing **instant communication**.

In business firms as well as government and private offices **automatic switchboards** known as private automatic branch exchange (PABX) are installed to facilitate internal as well as external communication.

Nowadays **mobile phones** are very popular as they give an access to the receiver at any time, anywhere. This is an improvement over the fixed line telephone. It possesses many modern features like Short Messaging Services (SMS), Multi Media Messaging Services (MMS) etc., by using which written

messages can be sent to the receivers. Both private as well as government organizations provide this services.

**Telex:**

Telex provides a means of printed communication using teleprinter. Teleprinters consist of machines **installed** at different places which are connected to a central exchange through cable. In each machine a **standard keyboard** is fitted. Any message typed by using those keyboards at one end is automatically typed at the other end. Hence **instant transmission** is possible.

**Fax:**

Fax or facsimile is an electronic device that enables instant transmission of any matter, which may be handwritten or printed like letters, diagrams, graphs, sketches, etc. By using telephone lines this machine sends the exact copy of the document to another fax machine at the receiving end. For sending any message the documents on which message, diagram or drawing is typed or drawn has to be put in the fax machine and the fax number (a telephone number) of the other party has to be dialed. Then the fax machine at the receiving end will instantly produce the **replica** of the matter. This is the most commonly used means of written communication in business. The main advantages of Fax system are easy operation, instant transmission of handwritten or printed matters over any distance, **simultaneous transmission** to two or more receivers, etc. The machine also **records** each **transaction** of communication. The only limitation is that fax machines accept document up to a standard size. Again, as a usual practice, a copy of the same document is sent to the receiver through post for their record. The receiver at the other end also makes a photocopy of the document immediately after receiving the message through fax machine, because there may be chances that the ink used by the machine may fade away after some time.

**E-mail:**

Electronic mail, popularly known as e-mail is a modern means of communication. The system makes use of electronic methods of **transmitting and receiving information**. In this case individuals, through the internet, **open an e-mail account** in their name from any ISP (**Internet Service Provider**). Then letters, messages, pictures or sounds can be sent through their computer to the e-mail accounts of other individuals. Whenever the other person will **access** his e-mail account he receives the message. The information is communicated audio visually and the process is extremely fast. This method is gaining popularity with increased use of internet among the users.

**Voice Mail:**

It is a computer-based system for receiving and responding to incoming telephone calls. It records and **stores telephone messages** through computer memory. The caller can get the required information by **dialing the voice mail number** and then following the instructions of the computer. The individuals can also record their messages through voice mail. The receivers at their own convenience can get the message from the machines and take action accordingly.

### Teleconferencing:

Conference generally refers to a meeting of people for consultation or discussion regarding any common issues. Here people sit together and **interact** face to face with each other. But, teleconferencing is a system through which people interact with each other without physically sitting in front of others. People can hear the voice and see the picture of others and also **respond to their queries** even if sitting in different countries. It requires the use of **modern electronic devices** like telephone, computers, television etc. For every teleconferencing a central controlling unit is required that facilitate the entire process of communication.

There are two different types of teleconferencing, one, **audio-conferencing** and other, **videoconferencing**. Let us know more about them.

**Audio-conferencing** - It is a two-way audio communication system in which the participants listen to the voice and respond immediately sitting at different places. People may listen to the voice through radio or television and put their queries by using telephone.

**Video-conferencing** - Besides listening to the voice, the participants of the conference can also see the picture of each other while talking themselves. This is called video-conferencing.

### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

• Letters. Telegrams	• Phones. Telex. Fax
<b>to convey our messages</b> – передати наше повідомлення, <b>to deliver</b> – доставляти, <b>receiver (addressee)</b> – адресат, <b>sender</b> – відправник, <b>messenger</b> – посильний, <b>post office</b> – пошта, <b>private courier</b> – приватний кур'єр, <b>to keep a record</b> – записувати, <b>to transmit</b> – передавати, <b>ordinary postal mail</b> – звичайна пошта, <b>specific fee</b> – спеціальна плата <b>in brief</b> – коротко, <b>ordinary telegram</b> – звичайна телеграма, <b>express telegram</b> – експрес телеграма, <b>extra charge</b> – додаткова плата, <b>cablegram</b> – телеграма, <b>phonogram</b> – телефонограма	<b>to talk to others over telephones</b> – поговорити з іншими по телефону, <b>Subscriber Trunk Dialing</b> – автоматичне міжміське з'єднання, <b>International Subscriber Dialing</b> – автоматичне міжнародне з'єднання, <b>instant communication</b> – безпосереднє спілкування, <b>automatic switchboard</b> – автоматичний комутатор, <b>mobile (cell) phone</b> – мобільний телефон, <b>to install</b> – встановлювати, <b>standard keyboard</b> – стандартна клавіатура, <b>instant transmission</b> – пряма передача, <b>replica</b> – точна копія, <b>simultaneous transmission</b> – одночасна передача, <b>to record</b> – записувати, <b>transaction</b> – транзакція

• E-mail. Voice Mail	• Teleconferencing
<p><b>transmitting and receiving information</b> – передача і отримання інформації,  <b>to open an e-mail account</b> – відкрити сторінку електронної пошти,  <b>Internet Service Provider</b> – провайдер Інтернет послуги,  <b>access</b> – доступ,  <b>to store telephone messages</b> – зберігати телефонні повідомлення,  <b>to dial the voice mail number</b> – набрати номер голосової пошти</p>	<p><b>to interact</b> – взаємодіяти,  <b>to respond to their queries</b> – відповідати на їхні запитання,  <b>modern electronic devices</b> – сучасні електронні прилади,  <b>audio-conferencing</b> – аудіо-конференція,  <b>videoconferencing</b> – відео-конференція</p>

### Additional Topic

#### How to Write a Letter

The art of writing a letter takes practice, knowledge about proper form and the ability to put into words the thoughts and feelings which are associated with the letter. Learning to write a letter can be difficult, as there are multiple types of letters which can be written. To avoid the time that it may take to learn to write each one of these letters, if you are able to learn to write a basic letter, that will help you to create letters for a variety of occasions.

#### Parts of the Letter:

##### *Your address*

At the top of your letter, you will put your address, so the reader will know where to send their reply to.

##### *Date*

Put the date on which the letter was written in the format Month Day Year i.e. June, 15, 2009.

##### *Inside Address*

The inside address is only required for a business letter and will include the address of the person you are writing to along with the name of the recipient, their title and company name. If you are not sure who the letter should be addressed to either leave it blank or try to put in a title, i.e. "Director of Human Resources".

##### *The Greeting*

The greeting will address the individual that the letter is being sent to. This is usually completed in the form of "Dear Anne" or "Hey Anne", for less formal letters.

##### *The Introductory Paragraph*

The first paragraph will generally outline the purpose for the letter and the reason that the letter is being sent. This can address any issues that are outstanding and is used to set the tone for the entire rest of the letter. In this first paragraph, the summary of the letter can be found and the intentions which will be displayed through the rest of the letter should be outlined. From the first paragraph of the letter, the introductory paragraph, the individual should be able to note the tone of the letter.

### ***The Body***

The body of the letter will expand upon the introductory paragraph and the individual can extend their thoughts and feelings further when it comes to the letter. The body of the letter can be anywhere from multiple pages for personal letters, to one page or two pages for most business letters and other types of proposals.

### ***The Closing***

In the closing of the letter, the individual will close the letter and finish any thoughts that have been mentioned. The closing of the letter comes in various forms from yours truly, for those individuals that are familiar with one another, to a traditional sincerely which is a versatile closing that can be used in a variety of letters detailing many situations.

### ***The Presentation of the Letter***

The presentation of the letter can be hand-written for less formal letters that are addressed to friends and family members, especially thank-you letters. In the case that you have illegible handwriting, you may want to consider typing the letter in these cases, although proper etiquette dictates against this type of behavior.

Formal letters which are written on behalf of businesses to or professional contacts should remain typewritten and grammatical and spelling error free. These types of letters should be legible and professional and therefore typing the letter is one of the most effective ways to ensure that the letter demonstrates a professional appearance through the entire course of the letter, thereby creating a positive impression on the recipient of the letter.

As well as outward presentation, it is important to determine the tone which will be written in the letter, including a professional tone or a tone that will be taken with friends or family members in a more informal setting. The tone should be established from the greeting of the letter, into the introductory paragraph, throughout the entire body of the letter and even into the closing statement and closing greeting of the letter. Read through the letter once it has been completed to ensure that the tone remains the same. The tone can be adjusted based on the language which is used through the letter, as well as the greetings (familiar as opposed to formal).

## Friendly Letter Sample

506 Country Lane  
North Baysville, CA 53286  
July 16, 2007

Dear Susan,

It feels like such a long time since the last time I saw you. I know it's only been several weeks since I saw you. So far my summer has been great!

I spend my all my weekends at the beach. I am getting a nice tan and you can no longer say I am paler than you. I have been playing lots of volleyball, surfing and building a nice collection of sea shells. Just this past weekend I took second place in a sandcastle building contest!

On the weekdays I work. I drive an ice cream truck around and sell ice cream to the kids. It is so cool. It is a combination of the two things I love most, ice cream and kids. The pay isn't too great but I love the job so much.

I hope the summer's been going well for you too. There's only a month and a half left in summer vacation and after that it's back to school. Would you like to meet up some time to before school starts?

Your friend,  
*Signature*

P.S. John Austin says hi.

## Business Letter Sample

3519 Front Street  
Mount Celebres, CA 65286

October 5, 2004

Ms. Betty Johnson  
Accounts Payable  
The Cooking Store  
765 Berliner Plaza  
Industrial Point, CA 68534



Dear Ms Johnson:

It has come to my attention that your company, The Cooking Store has been late with paying their invoices for the past three months.

In order to encourage our customers to pay for their invoices before the due date, we have implemented a discount model where we'll give you 2% off your invoice if you pay us within 10 days of receiving the invoice.

I hope that everything is going well for you and your company. You are one of our biggest customers, and we appreciate your business. If you have any questions, you can feel free to contact me at (555) 555-5555.

Sincerely,

*Signature*

Bob Powers  
Accounts Receivable

### Words and terms that we use to talk about telephoning:

<b>answer</b>	to say "hello" into the phone when it rings
<b>answering machine</b>	something that you can record a message on if the person you are calling isn't home
<b>busy signal</b>	a beeping sound that tells the caller that the other person is already on the phone with someone else
<b>call</b>	a telephone conversation; to telephone
<b>caller</b>	the person who telephones
<b>call back/phone back</b>	to call someone who called you first
<b>call display</b>	a screen that shows you who is calling
<b>cellular phone/cell phone</b>	a telephone that you can take with you away from your house; mobile phone
<b>cordless phone</b>	a phone that is not attached to the wall (you can walk short distances with it at home or in the garden)
<b>dial</b>	to press the buttons on the phone
<b>dial tone</b>	the sound the phone makes when you pick it up
<b>directory/phone</b>	a book that alphabetically lists local phone numbers of people

<b>book</b>	and businesses
<b>hang up</b>	to put the receiver down and end a call
<b>operator</b>	a person who answers telephone-related questions when you dial "0"
<b>pager</b>	a small machine you wear that makes a noise (or vibrates) when someone wants you to call them
<b>phone</b>	a telephone; to telephone
<b>phone booth/ pay phone</b>	a place where you can pay to use a telephone in public
<b>pick up</b>	to answer the phone
<b>receiver</b>	the piece on the phone that you speak into and listen from
<b>ring</b>	the sound a phone makes when somebody calls; to make that sound
<b>ringer</b>	the sound-piece that alerts a person that a call is coming through

## DIALOGUES

1)

**A:** Operator. Can I help you?

**B:** What's the area code for San Francisco?

**A:** 415.

**B:** Thank you. Now, let's see. 1-415-555-1212.

**C:** Directory Assistance for which city?

**B:** San Francisco.

**C:** Can I help you?

**B:** Alta California Co. at 1414 Adrian City.

**C:** The number is 692-1285.

**B:** Thank you.

**C:** You're welcome. Have a nice day!

**D:** Perry, Ross and Company. Can I help you?

**E:** I'd like to speak to James Singh, please.

**D:** Which department is he in?

**E:** Accounting.

**D:** Just a moment. I'll connect you.

2)

**Operator:** Hello, Frank and Brothers, How can I help you?

**Peter:** This is Peter Jackson. Can I have extension 3421?

**Operator:** Certainly, hold on a minute, I'll put you through...

**Frank:** Bob Peterson's office, Frank speaking.

**Peter:** This is Peter Jackson calling, is Bob in?

**Frank:** I'm afraid he's out at the moment. Can I take a message?

**Peter:** Yes, Could you ask him to call me? I need to talk to him about the Nuovo line, it's urgent.

**Frank:** Could you repeat the number please?

**Peter:** Yes, that's 65432476, and this is Peter Jackson.

**Frank:** Thank you Mr Jackson, I'll make sure Bob gets this message.

**Peter:** Thanks, bye.

**Frank:** Bye.

### **3) Business Telephone Conversation**

**A:** Good morning, John Sharp speaking.

**B:** John, hello. Tony Mills from Mega deals here. I've got a problem with that last order...

**A:** A problem, did you say?

**B:** Yes, well the order was incomplete. We ordered 600 but when we checked the consignment, it was obvious that we hadn't got them all.

**A:** So how many were you short?

**B:** Well, they came in boxes of 50 and we only had 8 boxes so we're missing 200.

**A:** When do you need the remainder?

**B:** By Monday; we must have them by Monday.

**A:** Immediately after the weekend, you say?

**B:** Well, we could just stretch to Tuesday but no later because...

**A:** Okay, leave it with me. I'll get on to dispatch and make sure you get another 200 by Tuesday at the latest.

**B:** Thank you, I'll call you back if there's a further problem.

### **4) How to Answer the Phone**

**Secretary:** Hello, this is Bloomingdales Department Stores. Nancy speaking. How can I help you?

**Caller:** This is George Brown from Ladies Garments Wholesale. I need to speak to Roger Dodge.

**Secretary:** Mr. Dodge just left for the day. Would you like to leave a message, Mr. Brown?

**Caller:** Oh! I missed him. This is an emergency call. Is it possible to speak to somebody else in his office?

**Secretary:** Regarding what?

**Caller:** We cannot deliver the order tomorrow.

**Secretary:** I see. I will connect you to Mr. Dodge's secretary, Linda. May I put you on hold for a second?

**Caller:** Sure. Go ahead.

*(The secretary resumes the call in a few seconds.)*

**Secretary:** Mr. Brown, Linda is on the phone.

**Caller:** Thank you, Nancy.

**Secretary:** You welcome, Mr. Brown. Thank you for your business with Bloomingdales.

### EXERCISES

#### 1. Match the columns correctly:

##### Column A

1. Telegram
2. Mobile Phones
3. Fax
4. Voice Mail
5. E-mail

##### Column B

- a) Receiving and sending mails through internet
- b) Instant transmission of a printed document
- c) Short Messaging Service
- d) Payment according to number of words used
- e) Computer based system of receiving and responding to incoming telephone calls

#### 2. Write 'V' to the phrase that illustrates Verbal Communication or 'NV' to the phrase that illustrates Non Verbal Communication:

1. A person reading a letter.
2. A teacher looking to a student with anger.
3. Saluting the national flag.
4. Talking to a shopkeeper
5. Nodding head silently.

#### 3. Choose the correct word:

1. When you pick up the phone to call someone you hear a *ringer/ dial tone/ receiver*.
2. If I'm not home leave a message on my *directory/ answering/ dial machine*.
3. Sally must be talking to her mom because I have been getting a *answer/ chat/ busy signal* for two hours.
4. I never answer my *cordless/ cell phone/ pay phone* while I'm driving.
5. Mark always turns his *ringer/ other line/ call display* off when he is studying.
6. I'm busy right now. Can you *hang up/ call back/ telephone book* later.
7. You have to *answer/ hang up/ dial "0"* for the operator.
8. I have a *receiver/ busy signal/ cordless* so I can do the dishes and chat at the same time.
9. You will need a quarter or a phone card if you want to use the *cell phone/ pay phone/ pager*.
10. I know it was my boyfriend who called because I have *dial tone/ call display/ directory*.

**4. Read and translate the article about the pros and cons of the Internet. Do you agree with the author?**

Some people think that the Internet is the most necessary thing which helps gaining education but there are also those who blame it for making people addicted. In this article, I am going to write about the pros and cons of the Internet.

One of the advantages of using Internet is that we can find every information we want to. The thing we are searching will be for sure found in one of the millions of pages. What is more, the searching process is very short and the Internet portals like 'YAHOO' and 'AltaVista' are created to help us with it. In addition, if we have the Internet at home, we don't have to go to the libraries. In this way, we are sparing our priceless time. Another advantage is that we can communicate almost with everyone through the Net with help of e-mails and messengers. It's cheaper and faster than the normal mail.

On the other hand, the disadvantages are a serious problem for today's world. The Internet is causing one of the worst diseases - the Internet addiction. People are wasting their time taking part in the useless chats. However, it's good because we can talk with almost everyone from the furthest sides of our planet, but on summary - it's not worth spending our time. In addition, if we don't have the ADSL, we spend too much money on the modem connection. There is also a danger for the teens because of the presence of pedophiles on the Net and lot of pages, which includes the videos for adults.

To sum up, the Internet is very necessary but we have to learn how to use it and avoid all the dangers of usage. We should remember that it's only a source of information and not a way to search for serious friendship.

**5. Read the list of points about the Internet and mark them A (advantage) or D (disadvantage):**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Web pages with photographs, music and video make downloading slow and boring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The latest information is available to you at any time, quickly and easily.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. On-line shopping can save you time and money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. With so much information, finding what you want can take hours.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. You can share your hobbies and special interests with chat groups.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. There is too much advertising instead of real information.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. You can make new friends in chat groups.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Making "chat friends" is not the same as actually meeting people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. You can send mail fast and cheaply.

**6. Do you know Email etiquette? Read and translate the text about it:**

Email etiquette is often a commonly overlooked part of the business and professional world despite being an important part of conveying a professional image. Emails written to friends and family will be less formal and will not need to

follow any particular guidelines or rules, but when writing to someone at a professional level the following guidelines and rules should be taken into account.

***Guidelines and Rules of Email Etiquette***

- Use a descriptive subject line, avoid leaving it blank or putting an irrelevant or general subject.
- Address the recipient by name to add a personal touch to your letter.
- DO NOT USE ALL CAPS!
- Avoid over using punctuation marks!!!!!!!!!!!!
- Avoid using abbreviations, such as IMHO (in my humble opinion) or TTYL (talk to you later), not everyone is familiar with them.
- If you are sending an attachment, make note of it and describe what the attachment is for in the body, some people are very wary of attachments due to the threat of computer viruses.
- Keep your emails as concise as possible without leaving out any important information.
- Always leave a signature line, don't assume the person already knows who you are.
- Do not keep on sending the same message to the same person over and over again, if they don't respond after a few days, send them an e-mail enquiring if they received your first email.
- Use spell check and proof read and revise your letter after it's done.
- Use threads, if you get a message from someone and you are going to respond, don't send a new message, simply hit the reply option on your email, this keeps the original subject line with "Re:" in front of it.
- Remember most emails are never completely private, there is always a chance of someone else besides the intended recipient reading it, so avoid writing any personal attacks which are unprofessional to begin with.
- When reading emails treat them as if they are private messages (unless you know you are allowed to share it with others).
- When you receive a message reply to it as soon as you have time to.

**7. A) Match the words and phrases 1-3 with a-c:**

1. website	a) place on the Internet where you can meet people
2. cyber cafe	b) a page on the Internet
3. chat room	c) place where you can access the Internet

**B) Which three Internet activities do you think are most popular with teenagers?**

1. visiting chat room
2. research for school homework

3. visiting sports sites
4. visiting film sites
5. buying clothes
6. buying CDs
7. reading the news

**8. Form the words which mean:**

1. A series of interconnected computers and databases around the world  
( T T E N R I N E )
2. A part of a website that can be read on a computer screen  
( E E A P B W G ) (2 words)
3. The first page that you can see when you look at a website  
( O E A M H P E G ) (2 words)
4. A piece of equipment that is used to send information from a computer through a telephone system  
( D E M O M )
5. To copy computer programs or information electronically  
( W D D L N O O A )
6. A connection between documents on areas on the internet  
( I N K L )
7. www is an internet address which stands for  
( W L W W R O B D I E E D ) (3 words)
8. To press the button on a computer mouse  
( L C K C I )
9. To organize and design the words on a page or written document  
( A M T O R F )
10. A computer program which allows you to look at pages on the internet  
( E O R B W R S )

**9. Read and translate the text how to make a phone call correctly:**



**Telephone Tips**

***Speak slowly and clearly***

Listening to someone speaking in a second language over the telephone can be very challenging because you cannot see the person you are trying to hear.

However, it may be even more difficult for the person you are talking with to understand you. You may not realize that your pronunciation isn't clear because your teacher and fellow students know and understand you. Pay special attention to your weak areas (such as "r's" and "l's" or "b's" and "v's") when you are on the phone. If you are nervous about using the phone in English, you may notice yourself speaking very quickly. Practise or write down what you are going to say and take a few deep breaths before you make a phone call.

***Make sure you understand the other speaker***

Don't pretend to understand everything you hear over the telephone. Even native speakers ask each other to repeat and confirm information from time to time. This is especially important if you are taking a message for someone else. Learn the appropriate expressions that English speakers use when they don't hear something properly. Don't be afraid to remind the person to slow down more than once. Keep your telephone in an area that is away from other noise distractions such as a radio or television.

***Practise with a friend***

Ask another student to practise talking on the phone with you. You might choose one night a week and take turns phoning each other at a certain time. Try to talk for at least fifteen minutes. You can talk socially, or role play different scenarios in a business environment. If you don't have access to a telephone, you can practise by setting two chairs up back to back. The most important thing about practising telephone English is that you aren't able to see each other's mouths. It is amazing how much people lip-read without realizing.

***Use businesses and recordings***

There are many ways to get free telephone English practice. After business hours, you can call and listen to recorded messages. Write down what you hear the first time, and then call back and check if your notes are accurate. Use the phone in your everyday life. Call for a pizza delivery instead of going out to eat. Call a salon to book a hair appointment. You can even phone the movie theatre to ask for the listings instead of using the newspaper. Some large cities have free recordings you can call for information such as your daily horoscope or the weather. (Make sure that you aren't going to get charged for these numbers first.) Some products have free phone numbers on the packaging that you can call for information. Think of a question you might want to ask and call the free number! For example, call the number on the back of the cereal box and ask for coupons. You will have to give your name and address. Make sure you have a pen handy so that you can repeat the information and check your comprehension.

***Learn telephone etiquette (manners)***

The way that you speak to your best friend on the phone is very different to the way you should speak to someone in a business setting. Many ESL speakers make the mistake of being too direct on the telephone. It is possible that the person on the other line will think that you are being rude on purpose if you don't use formal language in certain situations. Sometimes just one word such as "could" or



"may" is necessary in order to sound polite. You should use the same modals you would use in a formal "face-to-face" situation. Take the time to learn how to answer the phone and say goodbye in a polite manner, as well as all the various ways one can start and end a conversation casually.

## **10. Read and translate the text and do the task after it:**

### **Communication in Business**

Business persons share their business information with employees, suppliers, customers, distributors, Government, banks, insurance companies, etc. This sharing of information regarding business activities and their results is known as business communication. Business communication plays a very important role in the success of any business enterprise.

Let us discuss the importance of communication in business.

- Business communication helps in providing information to the customers regarding the products and services of the business organization.
- Effective communication facilitates quick-decision making. In today's world of competition, quick-decisions are necessary. Proper Communication saves times, reduces wastage and cost and induces prompt action.
- Proper communication helps businesspersons in managing the affairs of the business more efficiently. If the right type of information is made available at the right time through proper communication then the management can utilize it in the best possible manner.
- In any organization where communication is proper, employees are motivated to work more because their complaints, suggestions and grievances are taken care of properly.
- In every field, technology is continuously changing. Proper communication places a businessperson in a better position to improve his products, relationship with employers, customers and others.

### **Fill in the blanks:**

- 1) Business communication helps in providing information to customers regarding \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) Business communication helps in taking \_\_\_\_\_ decisions.
- 3) Proper business communication motivates the employees because their \_\_\_\_\_ are taken care of properly.
- 4) Sharing of information regarding business activities and their results is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5) Proper communication saves \_\_\_\_\_ and induces \_\_\_\_\_ action.

## **11. Make up dialogues:**

### **1) Requesting Travel Information**

*Student A:* Choose a city in your country. You are going to travel to this city for a business meeting over the next weekend. Telephone a travel agency and reserve the following:

- Round-trip flight.
- Hotel room for two nights.
- Restaurant recommendation.
- Prices and departure times.

**Student B:** You work in a travel agency. Listen to student A and offer him/her the following solutions:

- Round-trip flight: Air JW \$450 Coach, \$790 First Class.
- Hotel room for two nights: Hotel City \$120 a night in the downtown area, Hotel Relax \$110 a night near the airport.
- Restaurant Recommendation: Chez Marceau - average price \$70 a person.

## 2) Product Information

**Student A:** You need to purchase six new computers for your office. Call JA's Computer World and ask for the following information:

- Current special offers on computers.
- Computer configuration (RAM, Hard Drive, CPU).
- Guaranty.
- Possibility of discount for an order of six computers.

**Student B:** You work in at JA's Computer World answer student A's questions using the following information:

- Two special offers: Multimedia Monster - with latest Pentium CPU, 256 RAM, 40 GB Hard Drive, Monitor included - \$2,500 AND Office Taskmaster - cheaper CPU, 64 RAM, 10 GB Hard Drive, Monitor not included - \$1,200.
- 1 Year guaranty on all computers.
- Discount of 5% for orders of more than five computers.

## 3) Leaving a Message

**Student A:** You want to speak to Ms Braun about your account with her company, W&W. If Ms Braun isn't in the office, leave the following information:

- Your name
- Telephone number: 347-8910 (or use your own).
- Calling about changing conditions of your contract with W&W.
- You can be reached until 5 o'clock at the above number. If Ms Braun calls after 5 o'clock, she should call 458-2416.

**Student B:** You are a receptionist at W&W. Student A would like to speak to Ms Braun, but she is out of the office. Take a message and make sure you get the following information:

- Name and telephone number - ask student A to spell the surname.
- Message student A would like to leave for Ms Braun.
- How late Ms Braun can call student A at the given telephone number.

## 4) Selling Your Product

**Student A:** You are a salesperson for Red Inc. You are telephoning a client who you think might be interested in buying your new line of office supplies. Discuss the following information with your client:

- New line of office supplies including: copy-paper, pens, stationary, mouse-pads and white boards.
- You know the customer hasn't ordered any new products during this past year.
- Special discount of 15% for orders placed before next Monday.
- Any order placed before Monday will not only receive the discount, but also have its company logo printed on the products at no extra charge.

**Student B:** You work in an office and receive a telephone call from your local office supplier. As a matter fact, you need some new office supplies so you are definitely interested in what the salesperson has to offer. Talk about the following:

- New pens, stationary and white boards.
- Do they have any special offers.
- You would like to place an order for 200 packages of copy paper immediately.

### **III. GRAMMAR**

#### **1) The Passive Voice**

The Passive Voice is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the required tense form and *Participle II* of the notional verb (3<sup>rd</sup> form).

##### **Forms of the verb *to be*:**

<b>Present Indefinite</b>	is/ am/ are
<b>Past Indefinite</b>	was/ were
<b>Future Indefinite</b>	will be
<b>Present Continuous</b>	is being/ am being / are being
<b>Past Continuous</b>	was being/ were being
<b>Future Continuous</b>	-
<b>Present Perfect</b>	have been/ has been
<b>Past Perfect</b>	had been
<b>Future Perfect</b>	will have been

The Passive Voice is used when the focus is on the action. It is not important or not known, however, who or what is performing the action.

E.g. My bike was stolen.

Sometimes a statement in passive is more polite than in active voice, as the following example shows:

E.g. A mistake was made.

The Passive Voice is more widely used in Modern English than in Ukrainian. In Ukrainian only the direct object of a transitive verb in the Active Voice can be the subject of the sentence with the verb in the Passive Voice.

In English not only the direct object but the indirect object as well can be the subject of the sentence with the verb in the Passive Voice.

E.g. *Active*: They gave us a book.

*Passive*: We were given a book.

A book was given to us.

	<b>PRESENT</b>	<b>PAST</b>	<b>FUTURE</b>	<b>FUTURE-IN-THE-PAST</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	Books <b>are written</b> every day.	The book <b>was written</b> yesterday.	The book <b>will be written</b> tomorrow.	He said that the book <b>would be written</b> the next day.
<b>Continuous</b>	The book <b>is being written</b> now	The book <b>was being written</b> yesterday at 4 o'clock.	-	-
<b>Perfect</b>	The book <b>has just been written</b> .	The book <b>had been written</b> yesterday by 6 o'clock.	The book <b>will have been written</b> tomorrow by 2 o'clock.	He said that the book <b>would have been written</b> by 2 o'clock the next day.
<b>Perfect Continuous</b>	-	-	-	-

### *Exercises:*

#### **I. Open the brackets using the verbs in the *Present, Past* or *Future Indefinite Passive*:**

1. My question (to answer) yesterday.
2. Hockey (to play) in winter.
3. Mushrooms (to gather) in autumn.
4. Many houses (to burn) during the Great Fire of London.
5. His new book (to finish) next year.
6. Flowers (to sell) in shops and in the streets.
7. St. Petersburg (to found) in 1703.
8. Bread (to eat) every day.
9. The letter (to receive) yesterday.
10. Nick (to send) to Moscow next week.
11. I (to ask) at the lesson yesterday.
12. I (to give) a very interesting book at the library last Friday.
13. Many houses (to build) in our town every year.
14. This work (to do) tomorrow.
15. This text (to translate) at the last lesson.
16. These trees (to plant) last autumn.
17. Many interesting games always (to play) at our PT lessons.

18. This bone (to give) to my dog tomorrow.
19. We (to invite) to a concert last Saturday.
20. Lost time never (to find) again.

**II. Complete the sentences (Active or Passive Voice). You must either use the Present or Past Indefinite Tense:**

1. The Statue of Liberty (give) \_\_\_\_\_ to the United States by France.
2. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a present on the 100th anniversary of the United States.
3. The Statue of Liberty (design) \_\_\_\_\_ by Frederic Auguste Bartholdi.
4. It (complete) \_\_\_\_\_ in France in July 1884.
5. In 350 pieces, the statue then (ship) \_\_\_\_\_ to New York, where it (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ on 17 June 1885.
6. The pieces (put) \_\_\_\_\_ together and the opening ceremony (take) \_\_\_\_\_ place on 28 October 1886.
7. The Statue of Liberty (be) \_\_\_\_\_ 46 m high (93 m including the base).
8. The statue (represent) \_\_\_\_\_ the goddess of liberty.
9. She (hold) \_\_\_\_\_ a torch in her right hand and a tablet in her left hand.
10. On the tablet you (see / can) \_\_\_\_\_ the date of the Declaration of Independence (July 4, 1776).
11. Every year, the Statue of Liberty (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ by many people from all over the world.

**III. Open the brackets using the verbs in the necessary form of the verb:**

1. At the station they will (meet, be met) by a man from the travel bureau.
2. She will (meet, be met) them in the hall upstairs.
3. The porter will (bring, be brought) your luggage to your room.
4. Your luggage will (bring, be brought) up in the lift.
5. You may (leave, be left) your hat and coat in the cloakroom downstairs.
6. They can (leave, be left) the key with the clerk downstairs.
7. From the station they will (take, be taken) straight to the hotel.
8. Tomorrow he will (take, be taken) them to the Russian Museum.

**IV. Turn into the Passive Voice:**

1. The senior students laughed at the freshman.
2. The group spoke to the headmistress yesterday.
3. The young mothers looked after their babies with great care.
4. Nobody lived in that old house.
5. They sent for Jim and told him to prepare a report on that subject.
6. We thought about our friend all the time.
7. The doctor will operate on him in a week.
8. The teacher sent for the pupil's parents.
9. They looked for the newspaper everywhere.
10. Nobody slept in the bed.

### **V. Turn into the Passive Voice:**

1. You must take the box to the station. 2. You can cross the river on a raft. 3. The workers can finish the building of the house very soon. 4. You must return the books the day after tomorrow. 5. You must do three of these exercises tomorrow. 6. You can find the book you need in any library. 7. We must send these letters at once. 8. I can easily forgive this mistake. 9. You can find such berries everywhere. 10. You must do this work very carefully. 11. The doctor says they must take her to hospital. 12. You can do the work in three days. 13. The students must return all the library books before each summer vacation. 14. Monkeys can climb even the tallest trees.

### **VI. Open the brackets using the verbs in the necessary form of the verb in the Active or Passive Voice:**

1. Nobody (to see) him yesterday.  
2. The telegram (to receive) tomorrow.  
3. He (to give) me this book next week.  
4. The answer to this question can (to find) in the encyclopedia.  
5. We (to show) the historical monuments of the capital to the delegation.  
6. You can (to find) interesting information about the life in the USA in this book.  
7. Budapest (to divide) by the Danube into two parts: Buda and Pest.  
8. Yuri Dolgoruki (to found) Moscow in 1147.  
9. Moscow University (to found) by Lomonosov.  
10. We (to call) Zhukovski the father of Russian aviation.

### **VII. Turn into the Passive Voice:**

1. He stole a lot of money from the shop. 2. By six o'clock they had finished the work. 3. At twelve o'clock the workers were loading the trucks. 4. By three o'clock the workers had loaded the trucks. 5. We send our daughter to rest in the south every year. 6. They will show this film on TV. 7. They are building a new concert hall in our street. 8. I bought potatoes yesterday. 9. We shall bring the books tomorrow. 10. They are repairing the clock now. 11. They sell milk in this shop. 12. I have translated the whole text. 13. They broke the window last week. 14. When I came home, they had eaten the sweets. 15. We shall do the work in the evening. 16. He wrote this book in the 19th century. 17. They were playing tennis from four till five. 18. They have made a number of important experiments in this laboratory. 19. Livingstone explored Central Africa in the 19th century. 20. By the middle of autumn we had planted all the trees. 21. They will stage this play at the beginning of next season. 22. They have forgotten the story. 23. Has anybody explained the rules of the game to you? 24. They haven't brought back my skates.

### **VIII. Fill the gaps with the correct tenses (Active or Passive Voice):**

#### **Hadrian's Wall**

1. In the year 122 AD, the Roman Emperor Hadrian (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ his provinces in Britain.
2. On his visit, the Roman soldiers (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ him that Pictish tribes from Britain's north (attack) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
3. So Hadrian (give) \_\_\_\_\_ the order to build a protective wall across one of the narrowest parts of the country.
4. After 6 years of hard work, the Wall (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ in 128.
5. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ 117 kilometres long and about 4 metres high.
6. The Wall (guard) \_\_\_\_\_ by 15,000 Roman soldiers.
7. Every 8 kilometres there (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a large fort in which up to 1,000 soldiers (find) shelter.
8. The soldiers (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ over the frontier to the north and (check) \_\_\_\_\_ the people who (want) \_\_\_\_\_ to enter or leave Roman Britain.
9. In order to pass through the Wall, people (must go) \_\_\_\_\_ to one of the small forts that (serve) \_\_\_\_\_ as gateways.
10. Those forts (call) \_\_\_\_\_ milecastles because the distance from one fort to another (be) \_\_\_\_\_ one Roman mile (about 1,500 metres).
11. Between the milecastles there (be) \_\_\_\_\_ two turrets from which the soldiers (guard) \_\_\_\_\_ the Wall.
12. If the Wall (attack) \_\_\_\_\_ by enemies, the soldiers at the turrets (run) to the nearest milecastle for help or (light) \_\_\_\_\_ a fire that (can / see) \_\_\_\_\_ by the soldiers in the milecastle.
13. In 383 Hadrian's Wall (abandon) \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Today Hadrian's Wall (be) \_\_\_\_\_ the most popular tourist attraction in northern England.
15. In 1987, it (become) \_\_\_\_\_ a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

### **IX. Turn into the Active Voice using the suitable subject:**

1. The room was cleaned and aired.
2. Have all these books been read?
3. Whom were these letters written by?
4. The letter has just been typed.
5. She showed me the picture which had been painted by her husband.
6. I shall not be allowed to go there.
7. He has been told everything, so he knows what to do now.
8. All the questions must be answered.
9. The door has been left open.
10. Betty was met at the station.
11. The girl was not allowed to go to the concert.
12. She said that the new timetable had not yet been hung up on the notice board.
13. The chicken was eaten with appetite.
14. It was so dark, that the houses could not be seen.
15. The light has not yet been turned off.
16. The boy was punished for misbehaving.
17. By three o'clock everything had been prepared.
18. The dictation was written without mistakes.
19. Whom was the poem written by?
20. Her dress was washed and ironed.
21. I was not blamed for the mistakes.
22. The papers had been looked through and corrected by the next lesson.
23. This house was built last

year. 24. The letter has just been sent. 25. This article will be translated at the lesson on Tuesday. 26. When will this book be returned to the library?

### **X. Turn into the Active Voice using the suitable subject:**

1. Invitations have been sent to all the old pupils to be present at the school's thirtieth anniversary. 2. All the passengers in the bus were listening to the story of the boy who had been saved from drowning by the quickness of the driver. 3. The work was finished in time. 4. The child is taken care of. 5. This book must be read by every student. 6. This film can be seen at our cinema. 7. Spartan children were taught by their parents to endure all hardships. 8. Which article was translated by your brother? 9. They were being taught drawing at that lesson. 10. This name was seldom mentioned in his novels. 11. I am often told about it. 12. This man has been much spoken of. 13. When was it done? 14. What museums were visited last year? 15. Have your compositions been handed in? 16. What has been said is true. 17. After the facts had been thoroughly explained to her, she no longer felt worried. 18. He was fined for crossing the street in the wrong place. 19. The Greeks were attacked by the Persians from the sea. 20. This mountain has never been climbed before. 21. She told me that those newspapers had been carefully put away where they would not be lost. 22. Why have these cups been put here in this cupboard? 23. Nick was told to go home at once.

### **XI. Translate into English using the Passive Voice:**

a) 1. Цю книгу взяли з бібліотеки лише вчора. 2. Цих трьох студентів опитували два дня тому. 3. Вас екзаменували вранці? 4. Ця миша була спіймана вночі. 5. На цій фабриці виготовляють дуже гарні сумки. 6. Листи туди можна надсилати лише влітку, а телеграми цілий рік. 7. Мою подругу кожного року відправляють за кордон. 8. Її відправили в лікарню два дня тому. 9. Вчора нас послали в лабораторію. 10. Цей твір був написаний минулого тижня. 11. Телеграму надіслали пізно ввечері, і він отримає її лише вранці. 12. Цю статтю повинна прочитати вся група. 13. Цю вправу можна написати олівцем. 14. Всі ваші твори будуть повернені наступного тижня. 15. Цей лист можна написати на одному аркуші.

b) 1. На вокзалі його зустрине тато. 2. Ця картина була написана в XVI столітті. 3. Ці книги використовуються для роботи? 4. В Італії нам покажуть багато цікавих місць. 5. За цим чоловіком йшов величезний натовп. 6. Коли читали нове оповідання, хтось постукав у двері. 7. Вас уже запросили на вечірку? 8. Коли мама прийшла, обід був уже приготований. 9. За цим лікарем часто посилають. 10. На вокзалі його завжди зустрічають друзі. 11. Вам в школі дають книги для читання? 12. Хто написав цей лист? 13. В наступному році побудують багато шкіл. 14. Над ним всі сміються. 15. Ця робота буде завершена наступного тижня? 16. Коли посадили ці яблуні? 17. В інституті його часто згадували і говорили про нього. 18. Нас зустрінуть на



станції? 19. Відповідь буде відправлена через декілька днів. 20. Цей переклад буде завершений через декілька днів.

## **XII. Translate into English using the Passive Voice:**

а) 1. Де зараз ваш брат? – Його відправили у Францію. 2. Про вас щойно говорили. 3. Вдома над нею посміялися. 4. Ці квіти щойно зірвали. 5. Тебе вчора просили прийти раніше? 6. В наступному році його п'єса буде поставлена в цьому театрі. 7. Собор Святого Павла побудував архітектор Рен. 8. Коли написали лист? 9. Куди поклали книги? 10. В Санкт-Петербурзі будують багато будинків. 11. Твори англійських і американських письменників видають у всьому світі. 12. До того часу, як він приїхав, лист був уже отриманий. 13. Наш будинок зараз ремонтують. 14. Книги вже принесли з бібліотеки? 15. Цей кінотеатр був збудований до того, як ми приїхали сюди. 16. Вірші Роберта Бернса знають в багатьох країнах світу. 17. Коли Чарльз Діккенс був маленьким хлопчиком, його батька посадили в боргову в'язницю. 18. Ця опера була написана сто років тому. 19. Цей роман уже перекладений на п'ять мов. 20. Обід саме готували, коли я прийшов додому.

б) 1. Мене відрекомендували її батьку вчора. 2. Коли я повернусь додому, всі мої валізи будуть уже спаковані. 3. Невже цей твір був написаний до того, як Ви зробили доповідь? 4. Її слухали неухважно, і все, що вона сказала, швидко забули. 5. Про цей епізод багато говорять в нашому будинку. 6. Нас провели в залу і запропонували нам хороші місця. 7. Його виховала сестра. 8. Не хвилюйся, йому допоможуть. 9. В нашому районі будують три нові школи. 10. Цей міст все ще будують.

## ***IV. WRITING***

**Write an essay on one of the following topics:**

- 1. Means of Communication (100 Years Ago & Today).**
- 2. Pros & Cons of Using the Internet.**
- 3. Cell Phone: Is It a Only a Means of Communication or a Fashionable Gadget?**

## Література

1. Английский язык. Учебник для I курса институтов и факультетов иностранных языков / Л. Г. Стабунова, Б. А. Дианова, Т. С. Жолнитенко и др. – Л. : Просвещение, 1976. – 454 с.
2. Гужва Т. Английский язык. Разговорные темы : для абитуриентов, слушателей курсов, студентов филологических факультетов. 2-е изд., испр. – Киев : Тандем, 1997. – 352 с.
3. Гороть Є. І. Самовчитель англійської мови : Навч. посібник. – Луцьк : Вежа, 1995. – 334 с.
4. Драб Н. Л. Фразові дієслова : Посібник для студентів вищих навчальних закладів та учнів старших класів спеціалізованих шкіл. – Вінниця : Нова Книга, 2009. – 72 с.
5. Иванов А. О., Поуви Д. Английские разговорные формулы : Учеб. пособие для студентов пед. ин-тов по спец. “Иностр. яз.”. – М.: Просвещение, 1989. – 128 с.
6. Мансі Є. О. English : Фонетика, граматика, тексти, діалоги, розмовні теми: Підручник. Для студентів немовних факультетів вищих навчальних закладів. – К. : Видавничий центр “Академія”, 2004. – 368 с.
7. Матюшина-Герке Т. И., Кузьмичева Т. Н., Иванова Л. Л. Пособие для аудирования и развития навыков устной речи к учебнику английского языка для I курса филологических факультетов университетов. – М. : Высш. школа, 1979. – 191 с.
8. Міштал Маріуш. Тематичні тести з англійської мови : [Посібник]. – К. : Т-во “Знання”, КОО, 1999. – 352 с.
9. Посібник з розмовної практики / О. В. Кривошеєв, Л. М. Бищенко, Ю. І. Неженцев та ін. – К. : Вища шк., 1991. – 159 с.
10. Практический курс английского языка (для II курса факультетов английского языка педагогических вузов) / Под редакцией В. Д. Аракина. – М. : Высш. шк., 1973. – 479 с.
11. Enterprise 2. Elementary / Virginia Evans – Jenny Dooley. – EU : Express Publishing, 1999. – 150 p.
12. Headway. Intermediate / John & Liz Soars. – NY : Oxford University Press, 1997. – 120 p.
13. Kirne E., Hartman P. Interactions I : A Reading Skills Book . – USA : McGraw Hill, Inc., 1990. – 197 p.
14. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English : В 2-х т. – М. : Рус. яз., 1992. – 1229 с.
15. Matrix (Foundation Student's Book) / Jayne Wildman – NY : Oxford University Press, 2005. – 120 p.
16. Murphy R. English Grammar in Use : A Self-study Reference and Practical Book for Intermediate Students. – Cambridge : CUP, 1986. – 328 p.
17. Oxford Exam Excellence. – UK : Oxford University Press, 2006. – 200 p.

## Internet Sources

1. <http://www.ukstudentlife.com/Britain/Food/Meals.htm>
2. [http://www.englischhilfen.de/en/exercises/food\\_drinks/scrambled\\_letters4.htm](http://www.englischhilfen.de/en/exercises/food_drinks/scrambled_letters4.htm)
3. <http://englishclasses.com.ua/2010/01/topic-food-lexical-exercises-part-2/>
4. <http://iteslj.org/questions/food.html>
5. <http://esl.about.com/library/beginner/blwouldlike.htm>
6. <http://linguapress.com/intermediate/fast-food-dialogue.htm>
7. <http://linguistic.ru/index.php?id=101&op=content>
8. <http://www.english-at-home.com/real-life-english/shopping-vocabulary/>
9. <http://www.londontoolkit.com/whattodo/harrods.htm>
10. [http://window.edu.ru/window\\_catalog/pdf2txt?p\\_id=12928&p\\_page=8](http://window.edu.ru/window_catalog/pdf2txt?p_id=12928&p_page=8)
11. [www.michellehenry.fr/Supermarket-Vocabulary.doc](http://www.michellehenry.fr/Supermarket-Vocabulary.doc)
12. [http://www.guy-sports.com/humor/stories/story\\_supermarket\\_teacher.htm](http://www.guy-sports.com/humor/stories/story_supermarket_teacher.htm)
13. <http://www.google.com.ua/imgres?imgurl=http://www.valdosta.edu/~sndillin/4seasons.jpg&imgrefurl=http://www.valdosta.edu>
14. <http://www.bestreferat.ru/referat-16794.html>
15. [http://window.edu.ru/window\\_catalog/pdf2txt?p\\_id=13111&p\\_page=2](http://window.edu.ru/window_catalog/pdf2txt?p_id=13111&p_page=2)
16. <http://njj.ru/golits/>
17. [http://njj.ru/matr\\_int/matr\\_intlist.htm](http://njj.ru/matr_int/matr_intlist.htm)
18. <http://library.thinkquest.org/26804/weather.html>
19. [www.kosivart.com/.../ukraine.climate/](http://www.kosivart.com/.../ukraine.climate/)
20. <http://www.esltower.com/VOCABSHEETS/olympics/olympics.html>
21. <http://www.woodlands-junior.kent.sch.uk/customs/questions/sport.html>
22. <http://www.english-grammar.at/>
23. [http://www.volny.cz/pczekaj/angl/23-means\\_of\\_communication.htm](http://www.volny.cz/pczekaj/angl/23-means_of_communication.htm)
24. <http://www.nios.ac.in/Secbuscour/cc12.pdf>
25. [http://www.englishclub.com/speaking/telephone\\_tips.htm](http://www.englishclub.com/speaking/telephone_tips.htm)
26. [www.letterwritingguide.com](http://www.letterwritingguide.com)

## Contents

<b>MODULE 1</b>	
<b>Unit 1. Meals</b> .....	4
<i>Grammar</i>	
1) The Present Perfect Tense .....	31
2) Past Indefinite or Present Perfect?.....	33
<b>Unit 2. Shopping</b> .....	37
<i>Grammar</i>	
1) The Past Perfect Tense.....	52
2) The Future Perfect Tense .....	54
<b>MODULE 2</b>	
<b>Unit 3. Seasons and Weather</b> .....	57
<i>Grammar</i>	
Indirect Speech. Sequence of Tenses (1) .....	72
<b>Unit 4. Climate</b> .....	79
<i>Grammar</i>	
Indirect Speech. Sequence of Tenses (2) .....	91
<b>MODULE 3</b>	
<b>Unit 5. At the Doctor's. Health and Medicine</b> .....	95
<i>Grammar</i>	
1) The Present Perfect Continuous Tense .....	114
2) The Past Perfect Continuous Tense .....	116
3) The Future Perfect Continuous Tense.....	119
<b>Unit 6. Sports and Games</b> .....	120
<i>Grammar</i>	
All tenses revision .....	139
<b>MODULE 4</b>	
<b>Unit 7. Means of Communication.</b> .....	142
<i>Grammar</i>	
The Passive Voice .....	163
<b>Літэратура</b> .....	170